## A Thesis Submitted for the Degree of PhD at the University of Warwick

## Permanent WRAP URL:

http://wrap.warwick.ac.uk/111070

## Copyright and reuse:

This thesis is made available online and is protected by original copyright.
Please scroll down to view the document itself.
Please refer to the repository record for this item for information to help you to cite it.
Our policy information is available from the repository home page.

For more information, please contact the WRAP Team at: wrap@warwick.ac.uk

## COPYRIGHT

Reproduction of this thesis, other than as permitted under the United Kingdom Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988, or under specific agreement with the copyright holder, is prohibited.

This copy has been supplied on the understanding that it is copyright material and that no quotation from the thesis may be published without proper acknowledgement.

## REPRODUCTION QUALITY NOTICE

The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the original thesis. Whilst every effort has been made to ensure the highest quality of reproduction, some pages which contain small or poor printing may not reproduce well.

Previously copyrighted material (journal articles, published texts etc.) is not reproduced.

THIS THESIS HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED

# Model Subgroups of Finite Soluble Groups 

Ben Carr

A thesis submitted to the University of Warwick for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

9921508
Mathematics Institute
University of Warwick


December 1998

# Best Copy Available <br> Variable Print Quality 



## Contents

1 Background ..... 10
1.1 Irreducible representations of abelian groups over finite fields ..... 10
1.2 Zsigmondy's Theorem ..... 13
1.3 Symplectic spaces ..... 19
1.4 Special p-groups ..... 25
1.5 Frobenius groups ..... 36
1.6 Characters of Frobenius groups ..... 39
1.7 Fixed-point free automorphisms ..... 42
2 Model subgroups ..... 47
2.1 Definition ..... 47
2.2 Examples ..... 49
2.3 Epimorphic images ..... 51
2.4 Direct Products ..... 52
2.5 Central Products ..... 55
2.6 Nilpotent groups ..... 57
3 Frobenius groups ..... 59
3.1 Complements and model subgroups ..... 59
3.2 A necessary arithmetic condition ..... 62
3.3 Kernels and model subgroups ..... 65
3.4 Finite fields and model subgroups ..... 72
3.5 Conclusion ..... 80
$4 \mathcal{X}$-groups ..... 84
4.1 Definition ..... 84
4.2 Class closure properties ..... 92
4.3 Minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups ..... 95
5 Case Studies ..... 108
5.1 Case B ..... 108
5.2 Case C ..... 111
5.3 Example C ..... 126
5.4 Case E ..... 129
5.5 Example E ..... 132
5.6 Case F ..... 136
6 Main Theorem ..... 162
6.1 Metabelian Groups ..... 162
6.2 Soluble Groups ..... 165
6.3 Case D ..... 166
6.4 Nilpotent-by-Abelian Groups ..... 171
6.5 Conjecture ..... 172
6.6 Example Case D (Metabelian) ..... 173
6.7 Example Case G (Metabelian) ..... 173

## Acknowledgements

Firstly, I would like to thank my supervisor, Dr. Trevor Hawkes, for his strong support, excellent advice (not only of a mathematical nature) and unfailing enthusiasm over the last four years, without which I am sure that I would have fallen by the way-side.

Additional thanks go to Professor Martin Isaacs and Professor Michael Slattery, who both found time to speak to me about my research when I visited the United States in 1996.

I am grateful to the Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council and to the University of Warwick for their financial support as I am to all the administrative staff at the Mathematics Institute for being so efficient and approachable.

I would also like to offer my heartfelt thanks to Stéphanie and my parents for their continual encouragement and unstinting support throughout my research. Finally, I would like to thank Lucie just for being.

## Declaration

All the material in this thesis is, to the best of my knowledge, original work of the author and has not been published before, except for the attributed sources cited in the text.

## Abstract

In this thesis we begin the study of finite groups possessing a model subgroup, where a model subgroup $H$ of a finite group $G$ is defined to be a subgroup satisfying

$$
1_{H} \uparrow^{G}=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Ir}(G)} \chi
$$

We show that a finite nilpotent group possesses a model subgroup if and only if it is abelian and that a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ possesses a model subgroup if and only if
(a) $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$.
(b) $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some $d$ dividing $n$.
(c) The finite field $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d}$ satisfying $\operatorname{Norm}_{F / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$, where $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$.

We then go on to conjecture that a finite soluble group $G$ possessing a model subgroup is either metabelian or has a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$ and elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$. We consider a series of cases that need to be excluded in order to prove the conjecture and present some examples that shed light on the problems still to be overcome.

## Introduction

The starting point for the material contained in this thesis was the following definition cited by Gollan [9]. A model of length $k$ for the complex representations of $G$, or shorter a model for $G$, is a set $\tau_{1}, \ldots, \tau_{k}$ of monomial characters of $G$ such that

$$
\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{lrr}(G)} \chi=\sum_{i=1}^{k} \tau_{i} .
$$

Gollan's interest in models stemmed from the fact that given any complex irreducible character $\chi$ of $G$ and a model for $G$, one can construct a complex irreducible representation of $G$ affording the character $\chi$. Gollan's paper focussed on whether or not some of the sporadic simple groups had models. His results, that the smallest Janko group $J_{1}$ has a model, but the sporadic simple groups

$$
J_{3}, R u, O^{\prime} N, M_{11}, M_{22}, M c L, J_{2}
$$

do not, are deceptively discouraging, because searches for models for other specific finite groups have been successful. In particular, Kljacko [10] has found a model for the full general linear group over a finite field and Inglis, Richardson and Saxl [11] have found a model for the symmetric group of degree $n$.

To be precise Inglis, Richardson and Saxl found an involution model for the symmetric group of degree $n$. In other words a set $\tau_{1}, \ldots, \tau_{k}$ of monomial characters of $G$ and a set of conjugacy class representatives $e_{1}, \ldots, e_{k}$ of the set $\left\{g \in G: g^{2}=1\right\}$, such that each $\tau_{i}$ is induced from some linear character
of the centralizer of $e_{i}$ and

$$
\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi=\sum_{i=1}^{k} \tau_{i}
$$

Notice that if a finite group $G$ has an involution model then

$$
\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{Ir}(G)} \chi(1)=1+t
$$

where $t$ is the number of involutions in $G$, and consequently by a result of Frobenius and Schur [1, Corollary 4.6, page 51] every irreducible character of $G$ is afforded by a real representation. From here Baddeley [12] took up the mantle and considered whether certain Weyl groups possessed involution models. He found involution models for Weyl groups of type $B_{n}$ and type $D_{n}$ for odd $n$. However, $W\left(D_{4}\right)$ was discovered not to possess an involution model and this put paid to hopes that the existence of an involution model might be both a necessary and sufficient condition for all representations to be afforded by a real representation.

Although involution models have been studied in some depth there is one type of model that has received more attention than probably any other. Suppose that the set $\tau_{1}, \ldots, \tau_{k}$ of monomial characters is a model of length $k=|\operatorname{Irr}(G)|$ for $G$, then we say that $G$ possesses a model of maximal length or more commonly that $G$ is an $M$-group. Much work has been done to try to classify $M$-groups. Perhaps the best known result to date being that of Taketa [1, Corollary 5.13, page 67] which states that every $M$-group is soluble. The converse is false however, although it is true that every supersolvable group [ 1 , Corollary 6.22, page 87 ] is an $M$-group, the smallest counter-example being $S L(2,3)$.

The goal of this thesis is to begin the study of the opposite question to that of whether a finite group possesses a model of maximal length. Namely when does a finite group possess a model of minimal length. In other words when does a finite group possess a model of length 1.

In chapter 1 we state and prove a series of well-known results, which play a crucial role in the major theorems of this dissertation. In particular, we determine the faithful irreducible representations of an abelian group over a finite field, we introduce Zsigmondy's theorem, and we examine the structure and describe the irreducible characters of special $p$ - groups and Frobenius groups.

In chapter 2 we show, using Frobenius reciprocity, that a finite group $G$ possesses a model of length 1 if and only if it has a model subgroup, where a model subgroup is defined to be a subgroup $H$ of $G$ such that

$$
1_{H} \uparrow^{G}=\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi
$$

We then go on to prove that a finite nilpotent group has a model subgroup if and only if it is abelian.

In chapter 3 we show that a Frobenius group $G$ with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ has a model subgroup if and only if the following conditions are satisfied.
(a) $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$.
(b) $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some $d$ dividing $n$.
(c) The finite field $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d}$ satisfying $\operatorname{Nor}^{\prime} n_{F^{\prime} / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$, where $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$.

One of the key observations in the proof is that if $G$ is a non-abelian special 2-group of rank $2 n$ and the order of the centre of $G$ is greater than $2^{n}$, then the number of maximal subgroups of the centre of $G$ whose quotients are extra-special is even. This fact is itself a generalization, in the case where $p=2$, of a result of Beisiegel [6, Satz 1 ], which states that if $P$ is a special $p$ group of rank $2 n$ and $P / N$ is extra-special for every maximal subgroup $N$ of the centre of $P$, then the rank of the centre of $P$ is less than or equal to $n$.

In chapter 4 we define a $\mathcal{X}$-group to be either an abelian group or a group $G$ with subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots G_{m}, A$ satisfying the following statements :
(a) $G=G_{1} \ldots G_{m} A$;
(b) $\left[G_{i}, G_{j}\right]=1$ for $i \neq j$;
(c) $\left[G_{i}, A\right]=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(d) $G_{i}$ is not nilpotent for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(e) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(f) $A$ is abelian.

We prove that a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group possesses a model subgroup if and only if $G / Z(G)$ is a direct product of Frobenius groups satisfying the statements outlined on the previous page. We show that every epimorphic image of a $\mathcal{X}$-group is itself a $\mathcal{X}$-group and we define a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group to be a finite soluble group not contained in the class but whose other epimorphic images are. We then move onto the main focus of the chapter which is to give the following classification of minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups :

Case A $G$ is a $p$-group, $G^{\prime}$ is cyclic of order $p$ and is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$.

Case B $\quad G=U A$, where $U$ and $A$ are subgroups satisfying the following conditions.
(i) $U$ is a central product of subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ with amalgamated centres;
(ii) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$, where $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{i}\right|\right)=1$, for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(iii) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is an extraspecial $p$-group for all $i$;
(iv) $Z(U)=Z\left(G_{i}\right)=Z\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i$;
(v) $G_{i} / Z(U)$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{\mathrm{i}} Z(U) / Z(U) \cong C_{\mathrm{i}}$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / Z(U)$ for all $i$;
(vi) $A$ is a $p$-group and $Z(U) \subseteq A \subseteq C_{G}(U)$;
(vii) Either $A$ is cyclic or $A^{\prime}=Z(U)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $A$.

Case C $G=G^{\prime} C$ and the following conditions hold :
(i) $\left(\left|G^{\prime}\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(ii) $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ of order $r^{m}$;
(iii) $G / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is a Frobenius group at $C \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ of order $r^{n}$;
(iv) $M=C_{C}\left(\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)\right)$;
(v) $G^{\prime}$ is either homocyclic or special.

Case D $G=\left(G^{\prime} A\right) C$ and the following conditions hold :
(i) $\left(\left|G^{\prime} A\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(ii) $K=\left[G^{\prime}, A\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $A / K=Z(G / K)$;
(iv) $G / A$ is a Frobenius group at $C A / A$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} A / A$;
(v) $G^{\prime} A$ is an $r$-group;
(vi) $A$ is elementary abelian;
(vii) $G^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian, homocyclic or special;
(viii) $K=\Phi\left(G^{\prime} A\right)=\left(G^{\prime} A\right)^{\prime}$ and $K \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime} A\right)$.

Case E $G=G_{1} G_{2}$ and the following conditions hold:
(i) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$;
(ii) $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{i}\right|\right)=1$;
(iii) $K=\left[G_{1}^{\prime}, G_{2}^{\prime}\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iv) $G / K \cong G_{1} / K \times G_{2} / K$;
(v) $G_{i} / K$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} K / K$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ of order $r^{n_{i}}$;
(vi) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian;
(vii) $G_{1}^{\prime} G_{2}^{\prime}$ is special.

Case $\mathbf{F} \quad G=G^{\prime \prime} X$ and the following conditions hold:
(i) $G^{\prime \prime} \cap X=1$;
(ii) $G^{\prime \prime}$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $X$ is a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group;
(iv) $X \subseteq A u t\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$.

Case G There exists a group $L$ and a monomorphism $\mu$ from $G$ into $L$ satisfying the following conditions:
(i) $L=L_{0} \times \cdots \times L_{m}$;
(ii) $L_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $L_{i}^{\prime}$;
(iii) $\mu\left(G^{\prime}\right)=L_{0}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times L_{m}^{\prime}$;
(iv) $L=\mu(G) L_{i}$ for $0 \leq i \leq m$.

In Chapter 5 we consider under what circumstances a non-metabelian minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying the co-prime condition

$$
\left(\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

can possess a model subgroup, and arrive at the following conclusions.
If $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying the conditions outlined in Case B, then $G$ does not possess a model subgroup.

If $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 satisfying the conditions outlined in Case $\mathbf{C}$ and $G$ possesses a model subgroup, then $n=6, r=2$, $m<n$ and $M$ acts reducibly on $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. We give an example of a finite group possessing a model subgroup which satisfies these conditions.

If $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying the conditions outlined in Case $E$ and $G$ possesses a model subgroup, then the $G_{1} / K$ are Frobenius groups
with elementary abelian Frobenius kernels of order $2^{n_{1}}$ and cyclic Frobenius complements of order $2^{\frac{5_{1}}{2}}+1$. We give an example of a finite group possessing a model subgroup which satisfies these conditions whose derived subgroup is of a form outlined by Beisiegel [6, Lemma 4].

If $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying ( $\left.\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)$ and the conditions outlined in Case F, then $G$ either does not admit a model subgroup or there exists a normal subgroup $N$ of $G$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$.

In Chapter 6 we prove that if a metabelian group $G$ possesses a model subgroup and

$$
\left(\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

then there exists a monomorphism $\mu_{G}$ from $G$ to a $\mathcal{X}$-group.
Putting this together with the results from our case studies, we prove that if $G$ is a finite soluble group and we assume that $G$ possesses a model subgroup,

$$
\left(\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

and the monomorphism $\mu_{G / G^{\prime \prime}}$ is in fact an isomomorphism, then $G$ satisfies one of the following statements :
(a) $G$ is metabelian.
(b) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{\boldsymbol{n}}+1$.
(c) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{6}$ and cyclic Frobenius kernel of order $\left(2^{6}-1\right) /\left(2^{2}-1\right)$.

We go on to show that if $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 satisfying the conditions in Case $\mathbf{D}$ and $G$ possesses a model subgroup, then $G / A$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} A / A$ of order $2^{n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$. And consequently we can prove that if $G$ is a finite nilpotent-by-abelian group and $G / G^{\prime \prime}$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group, then $G$ possesses a model subgroup only if one of the statements above is satisfied.

We formulate the following conjecture.
Conjecture 1 If a finite soluble group $G$ possesses a model subgroup, then $G$ satisfies one of the following two statements :
(a) $G$ is metabelian.
(b) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$.

We end by giving an example of a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying the conditions in Case $\mathbf{G}$ and a metabelian minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group satisfying the conditions in Case D which both possess model subgroups, giving an indication of what the structure of the additional minimal counter-examples that would need to be considered might look like.

## Chapter 1

## Background

In this chapter we state and prove a series of results, for reference purposes, that play a crucial role in this thesis. However, more general standard results about finite groups that can be found in Huppert [2] and about character theory that can be found in Isaacs [1] will be stated without proof when required.

### 1.1 Irreducible representations of abelian groups

## over finite fields

The result in this section can be found in Doerk and Hawkes [5, (9.8) Theorem, page 161-162].

Theorem 1.1.1 Let A be an abelian group of order $n$, let $q$ be a prime power satisfying $(q, n)=1$, and let $m$ be the smallest natural number such that

$$
n \mid q^{m}-1 \text { in other uords } m \equiv o(q) \bmod n .
$$

Suppose that $V$ is an irreducible $F_{q}[A]$-module faithful for $A$. Then

$$
A=<a\rangle
$$

is cyclic and there exists a primitive nth root of unity $\epsilon$ of $F_{q^{m}}$ such that $V$ is isomorphic to $F_{q^{m}}$ viewed as an $F_{q}[A]$-module via the $A$-action

$$
x a^{i}=x \epsilon^{i} \quad(\text { field multiplication })
$$

for all $x \in F_{q^{m}}$ and $0 \leq i \leq n-1$. Furthermore $F_{q^{m}}=F_{q}(\epsilon)$ and the dimension of $V$ over $F_{q}$ equals $m$.

Proof. Let $E=\operatorname{Hom}_{F_{q}(A)}(V, V) \subseteq \operatorname{Hom}_{F_{q}}(V, V)$ and let

$$
\rho: F_{q}[A] \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{F_{q}}(V, V)
$$

denote the representation of $F_{q}[A]$ afforded by $V$, thus $v b=v \rho(b)$ for all $v \in V$ and $b \in F_{q}[A]$. Since $A$ is abelian, $F_{q}[A]$ is commutative, and therefore $\rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right) \subseteq E$. By Schur's lemma $E$ is a division algebra, and therefore

$$
\rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right)-\{0\}
$$

is a group, because $\rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right)-\{0\}$ is a finite multiplicatively closed subset of the group $E^{\times}$. We have proved that $K=\rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right)$ is an extension field of $F_{q}$. So $\rho(A)$ is a subgroup of $K^{\times}$, the multiplicative group of $K$, and is cyclic as a consequence. Because $V$ is a faithful $A$-module, $A$ is isomorphic to $\rho(A)$. So $A=<a\rangle$ and

$$
K=\rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right)=F_{q}(\epsilon)
$$

where $\epsilon=\rho(a)$ is a primitive $n$th root of unity. Moreover, when $K$ is viewed as an $F_{q}$-space, it becomes an $A$-module over $F_{q}$ if we define

$$
x a^{2}=x \epsilon^{2} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in K$ and $0 \leq i \leq n-1$. Now let $r=\left|K: F_{q}\right|$. Since $K^{\times}$, which is cyclic of order $q^{T}-1$, contains the element $\epsilon$ of order $n$, we have

$$
q^{r} \equiv 1 \bmod n
$$

and therefore $m$ divides $r$; in particular $F_{q^{m}}$ is a subfield of $F_{q^{r}}$. But by hypothesis $n$ divides $q^{m}-1$, and so the multiplicative group of $F_{q^{m}}$ contains the unique subgroup $<\epsilon>$ of order $n$ in $F_{q^{r}}^{\times}$. Since $F_{q^{r}}=K=F_{q}(\epsilon)$, we therefore have $K \subseteq F_{q^{m}}$; hence

$$
K=F_{q^{m}}
$$

So regarding $V$ as a $\operatorname{Hom}_{F_{q}}(V, V)$-module in the natural way, we may also
 non-zero $F_{q^{m}}$-subspace of $V$, then

$$
U=U F_{q^{m}}=U \rho\left(F_{q}[A]\right)=U\left(F_{q}[A]\right)
$$

hence $U$ is an $F_{q}[A]$-submodule of $V$, and it follows from the irreducibility of $V$ that the dimension of $V$ over $F_{q^{m}}$ equals 1 . Thus if $w$ is a fixed non-zero vector in $V$, the map

$$
\theta: x \rightarrow w x
$$

is a $F_{q^{m}}$-module isomorphism from the regular module $F_{q^{m}}$ onto $V$ since $\theta\left(F_{q^{m}}\right)$ is a non-zero $F_{q^{m}}$ - subspace of $V$. Regarding $F_{q^{m}}$ as an $F_{q}[A]$-module via the $A$ - action described above for $x \in F_{q^{m}}$ we obtain

$$
(x a) \theta=(x \epsilon) \theta=w(x \epsilon)=(w x) \epsilon=(w x) \rho(a)=(x) \theta \rho(a)=(x) \theta a
$$

and therefore $\theta$ is the desired $F_{q}[A]$ - isomorphism from $F_{q^{m}}$ onto $V$. The proof is complete.

### 1.2 Zsigmondy's Theorem

All of the results in this section can be found in Huppert and Blackburn [7, pages 503-509].

Lemma 1.2.1 Let $\phi_{n}$ be the $n$th cyclotomic polynomial over the field of rational numbers. Let $q$ be a prime, let a be an integer prime to $q>2$ and let $f$ be the order of a modulo $q$. For each non-zero integer $x$, let $w_{q}(x)=\max \left\{l \mid q^{l}\right.$ divides $\left.x\right\}$. Then the following hold.
(a) $w_{q}\left(\phi_{f}(a)\right)>0$.
(b) $w_{q}\left(\phi_{f q^{\prime}}(a)\right)=1$ for all $i \geq 1$.
(c) $w_{q}\left(\phi_{m}(a)\right)=0$ for all other $m \geq 1$.

Proof. (a) As $f$ is the order of $a$ modulo $q, w_{q}\left(a^{i}-1\right)=0$ if $f$ does not divide i. Thus $w_{q}\left(\phi_{i}(a)\right)=0$ if $f$ does not divide $i$. From

$$
\phi_{f}(a) \prod_{i \mid f, i \neq f} \phi_{i}(a)=a^{f}-1
$$

it follows that $w_{q}\left(\phi_{f}(a)\right)=w_{q}\left(a^{f}-1\right)>0$. (b) Put $n=f q^{\bar{i}}, r=f q^{i-1}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{r}-1} & =\frac{\left(\left(a^{r}-1\right)+1\right)^{q}-1}{a^{r}-1} \\
& =\left(a^{r}-1\right)^{q-1}+q\left(a^{r}-1\right)^{q-2}+\cdots\left(\frac{q}{2}\right)\left(a^{r}-1\right)+q
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $a^{r}-1 \equiv 0 \bmod q$ and $\left(\frac{q}{2}\right) \equiv 0 \bmod q$, we have $\left(a^{n}-1\right) /\left(a^{r}-1\right) \equiv q \bmod q^{2}$; thus

$$
w_{q}\left(\frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{r}-1}\right)=1, \text { and } \sum_{d|n, d| r} w_{q}\left(\phi_{d}(a)\right)=1,
$$

because $\left(a^{n}-1\right) /\left(a^{r}-1\right)=\prod_{d\left|n_{d} d\right| r} \phi_{d}(a)$. Hence there exists a $d \mid n$ such that $d$ does not divide $r$ and $w_{q}\left(\phi_{d}(a)\right)=1$. Thus $w_{q}\left(a^{d}-1\right)>0$ and $f \mid d$. The only integer $d$ satisfying these conditions is $d=n$; thus $w_{q}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)=1$. (c) If $w_{q}\left(\phi_{m}(a)\right) \neq 0, w_{q}\left(a^{m}-1\right) \neq 0$ and $f \mid m$. So we have to show that $w_{q}\left(\phi_{m}(a)\right)=0$ if $m=f q^{i} l$ with $i \geq 0, l>1$ and $q$ not a divisor of $l$. If $r=f q^{i}, \phi_{m}(a)$ is a divisor of $\left(a^{m}-1\right) /\left(a^{r}-1\right)$. Since $a^{r} \equiv 1 \bmod q$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{a^{m}-1}{a^{r}-1} & =\frac{\left(\left(a^{r}-1\right)+1\right)^{l}-1}{a^{r}-1} \\
& =\left(a^{r}-1\right)^{l-1}+l\left(a^{r}-1\right)^{l-2}+\cdots+l
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $w_{q}\left(\phi_{m}(a)\right)=0$. The proof is complete.
Lemma 1.2.2 Let $\phi_{n}$ be the nth cyclotomic polynomial over the field of rational numbers. Let a be an odd integer. For each non-zero integer $x$, let $w_{2}(x)=\max \left\{l \mid 2^{l}\right.$ dividesx $\}$. Then the following hold.
(a) $w_{2}\left(\phi_{2^{i}}(a)\right)=1$ for $i \geq 2$.
(b) $w_{2}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)=0$ for $n \neq 2^{i}(i=0,1, \ldots)$.

Proof. Write $n=2^{i} l$ with $i \geq 0, l$ odd and $l \geq 1$. If $l>1$, then

$$
\frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{2^{i}}-1}=\left(a^{2^{1}}-1\right)^{l-1}+l\left(a^{2^{i}}-1\right)^{l-2}+\cdots+l \not \equiv 0 \bmod 2
$$

and $w_{2}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)=0$. If $l=1$, then

$$
\phi_{2^{i}}(a)=\frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{2 i}-1}=a^{2^{i-1}}+1
$$

so for $i \geq 2, \phi_{2^{i}}(a) \equiv 2 \bmod 4$ and $w_{2}\left(\phi_{2^{i}}(a)\right)=1$.

Lemma 1.2.3 Let $\Phi_{n}(x, y)=y^{\phi(n)} \phi_{n}(x / y)$, where $\phi$ is the Euler function and $\phi_{n}$ is the $n$th cyclotomic polynomial. Let

$$
L(n)=i n f\left|\Phi_{n}(a, b)\right|
$$

where $a, b$ run through all complex numbers for which $|a| \geq|b|+1$ and $|b| \geq 1$.
Then the following hold.
(a) If $p$ divides $n, L(n p) \geq L(n)$ and $L(n p) \geq(1+p)^{\phi(n)}$.
(b) If $p$ does not divide $n, L(n p) \geq L(n)^{p-1}$.
(c) For $p \geq 5, L(p)>2 p$.
(d) For $p \geq 5, L(2 p)>2 p$.

Proof. (a) Since $p$ divides $n, \Phi_{n}(a, b)=\Phi_{n}\left(a^{p}, b^{p}\right)$. Since $|a| \geq|b|+1$ and $|b| \geq 1,|a|^{p} \geq|b|^{p}+1$ and $|b|^{p} \geq 1$, so $L(n p) \geq L(n)$. Also

$$
\Phi_{n}(a, b)=\prod_{\epsilon}(a-\epsilon b) \geq(|a|-|b|)^{\phi(n)}
$$

where $\epsilon$ runs through the $\phi(n)$ primitive $n$th roots of unity. But for $|a| \geq$ $|b|+1$ and $|b| \geq 1$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
|a|^{p}-|b|^{p} & =\left((|a|-|b|+|b|)^{p}-|b|^{p}\right. \\
& \geq(|a|-|b|)^{p}+p(|a|-|b|)^{p-1}|b| \\
& \geq 1+p
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $\left|\Phi_{n}(a, b)\right| \geq(1+p)^{\phi(n)}$ and $L(n p) \geq(1+p)^{\phi(n)}$.
(b) Since $p$ does not divide $n$,

$$
\Phi_{n p}(a, b)=\prod_{t p=1 \neq \epsilon} \Phi_{n}(a, b \epsilon)
$$

So $L(n p) \geq L(n)^{p-1}$.
(c) We have

$$
\left|\Phi_{p}(a, b)\right|=\left|\frac{a^{p}-b^{p}}{a-b}\right| \geq \frac{\left|a^{p}\right|-\left|b^{p}\right|}{|a+b|}=\frac{x^{p}-y^{p}}{x+y}
$$

where $x=|a|, y=|b|$. Thus $x \geq y+1$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(x^{p}-y^{p}\right)(1+2 y)= & x(1+y)\left(x^{p-1}-(1+y)^{p-1}\right)+y\left(x^{p}-(1+y)^{p}\right) \\
& +y^{p}(x-(1+y))+(x+y)\left((1+y)^{p}-y^{p}\right) \\
\geq & (x+y)\left((1+y)^{p}-y^{p}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
\left|\Phi_{p}(a, b)\right| \geq \frac{x^{p}-y^{p}}{x+y} \geq \frac{(1+y)^{p}-y^{p}}{1+2 y}
$$

But $y=|b| \geq 1$, so

$$
(1+y)^{p}-2^{p}=\sum_{i=0}^{p}\left(\frac{p}{i}\right)\left(y^{i}-1\right) \geq y^{p}-1
$$

and

$$
(1+y)^{p}-2^{p} y=\sum_{i=0}^{p}\left(\frac{p}{i}\right)\left(y^{i}-y\right) \geq y^{p}-y
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
3(1+y)^{p}-2^{p}(1+2 y) & =\left((1+y)^{p}-2^{p}\right)+2\left((1+y)^{p}-2^{p} y\right) 3 y^{p} \\
& \geq\left(2^{p}-1\right)(1+2 y) \\
& \geq y^{p}-1+2\left(y^{p}-y\right)=3 y^{p}-(1+2 y)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $3(1+y)^{p}-3 y^{p} \geq\left(2^{p}-1\right)(1+2 y)$ and

$$
\left|\Phi_{p}(a, b)\right| \geq \frac{(1+y)^{p}-y^{p}}{1+2 y} \geq \frac{2^{p}-1}{3}
$$

Hence $L(p) \geq \frac{2^{p}-1}{3}$ and for $p \geq 5, L(p)>2 p$.
(d) Follows from (b) and the identity $\phi_{2 p}(a, b)=\phi_{p}(a,-b)$.

Lemma 1.2.4 Let $\Phi_{n}(x, y)=y^{\phi(n)} \phi_{n}(x / y)$, where $\phi$ is the Euler function and $\phi_{n}$ is the nth cyclotomic polynomial. Let

$$
L(n)=i n f\left|\Phi_{n}(a, b)\right|
$$

where $a, b$ run through all complex numbers for which $|a| \geq|b|+1$ and $|b| \geq 1$. Then $L(n)>\prod_{p \mid n} p$, where $p$ runs through all prime divisors of $n$, except when $n=1,2,3$ or 6 .

Proof. We shall prove the result by induction on $n$. If $n$ is divisible by the square of a prime $p$, then $L(n) \geq L(n / p)$ by Lemma 1.2.3(a). The assertion then follows by induction unless $n / p$ is $1,2,3$ or 6 . Since $p$ divides $n / p$, the only possibilites are $n=4,9,12$ or 18 . But by the second assertion of (a), $L(4) \geq 3, L(9) \geq 16, L(12) \geq 9$ and $L(18) \geq 16$. So we may assume that $n$ is square-free. Let $p$ be the greatest prime divisor of $n$ and write $n=p m$. By hypothesis, $p \geq 5$. If $m=1$, the assertion follows from Lemma 1.2.3(c); if $m=2$, it follows from Lemma 1.2.3(d). If $m=3, n=3 p$ and $L(n) \geq 4 p^{2}>6 p$ by Lemma 1.2.3(b) and (c).Similarly if $m=6, L(n) \geq L\left(2 p^{2}\right)>4 p^{2}>6 p$ by Lemma $1.2 .3(\mathrm{~b})$ and (d). For other values of $m, L(m)>\prod_{q \mid m} q$ by the inductive hypothesis. Thus $L(m)>3$, because $m$ cannot be a power of 2 since $m$ is square-free. Hence $L(m)^{p-1} \geq p L(m)$ and it follows that $L(n) \geq$ $L(m)^{p-1} \geq p L(m)>\prod_{q \mid n} q$ by Lemma $1.2 .3(\mathrm{~b})$. The proof is complete.

Theorem 1.2.5 Let $a, n$ be integers greater than 1 . Then except in the cases $n=2, a=2^{b}-1$ and $n=6, a=2$, there is a prime $q$ with the following properties.
(a) $q$ divides $a^{n}-1$.
(b) $q$ does not divide $a^{i}-1$ whenever $0<i<n$.
(c) $q$ does not divide $n$.

In particular, $n$ is the order of a modulo $q$.
Proof. Suppose that for each prime divisor $q$ of $a^{n}-1$, there exists $i$ such that $0<i<n$ and $q$ divides $a^{i}-1$. since $a^{i}-1=\prod_{d \mid \mathfrak{l}} \phi_{d}(a)$, it follows in particular that for each prime divisor $q$ of $\phi_{n}(a)$, there exists $d<n$ such that $q$ divides $\phi_{d}(a)$. Let $f$ be the order of $a$ modulo $q$. Since $w_{q}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)>0$ and $w_{q}\left(\phi_{d}(a)\right)>0$, it follows from Lemma 1.2 .1 that if $q>2, n=f q^{k}$ and $d=f q^{j}$, where $0 \leq j<k$. Thus $q$ divides $n$. Furthermore, $w_{q}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)=1$ by Lemma 1.2.1. If $w_{2}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)>0$, we see from Lemma 1.2 .2 that $n=2^{i}$ and, if $n>2, w_{2}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)=1$. It follows that if $n>2$,

$$
\left|\phi_{n}(a)\right|=\prod_{q} q^{w_{q}\left(\phi_{n}(a)\right)} \leq \prod_{q \mid n} q .
$$

By Lemma 1.2.4, however

$$
\left|\phi_{n}(a)\right|=\left|\Phi_{n}(a, 1)\right|>\prod_{q \mid n} q
$$

except when $n=1,2,3$ or 6 . Further, $\phi_{3}(a)=a^{2}+a+1>3$ for all $a>1$, and $\phi_{6}(a)=a^{2}-a+1>6$ for all $a \geq 3$. Thus only the cases $n=2$ and $a=2, n=6$ remain. If the assertion is false for $n=2$, each prime divisor of $a^{2}-1$ divides $a-1$. It follows at once that 2 is the only prime divisor of $a+1$, since $(a+1, a-1) \leq 2$; thus $a=2^{b}-1$. Apart from the stated exceptions, then, there is always a prime $q$ such that $q$ divides $a^{n}-1$ and $q$ does not divide $a^{i}-1$ for $0<i<n$. Thus $n$ is the order of $a$ modulo $q$. Hence $n$ divides $q-1$ and $q$ does not divide $n$.

### 1.3 Symplectic spaces

In this section we shall establish some well-known facts about symplectic spaces, which can be found in Huppert [2, pages 215-219].

Let $V$ be a finite dimensional vector space over a field $K$. Then an alternating bilinear form $f$ on $V$ is a map

$$
f: V \times V \rightarrow K
$$

with the following properties :

$$
\begin{aligned}
f\left(k_{1} u+k_{2} v, w\right) & =k_{1} f(u, w)+k_{2} f(v, w) \\
f\left(u, k_{1} v+k_{2} w\right) & =k_{1} f(u, v)+k_{2} f(u, w) \\
f(u, u) & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $u, v, w \in V$ and $k_{i} \in K$. Clearly $f(v, w)=-f(w, v)$ for all $v, w \in V$, because

$$
\begin{aligned}
0=f(v+w, v+w) & =f(v, v)+f(v, w)+f(w, v)+f(w, w) \\
& =f(v, w)+f(w, v)
\end{aligned}
$$

A symplectic space is a composite object consisting of a finite dimensional vector space $V$ and an alternating form $f$ on $V$. Suppose that $V$ and $W$ are two symplectic spaces with alternating bilinear forms $f$ and $g$. Then we call a bijective linear map $\gamma$ from $V$ to $W$ with

$$
f\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)=g\left(\gamma\left(v_{1}\right), \gamma\left(v_{2}\right)\right)
$$

for all $v_{i} \in V$ an isometry. We say that $V$ and $W$ are isometric, if an isometry from $V$ to $W$ exists. The group of isometries from $V$ into itself is called the symplectic group on $V$ and is denoted by $S p(V)$.

Let $K$ be a field of characteristic 2. Let $f: V \times V \rightarrow K$ be a bilinear form, and let $q: V \rightarrow K$ be a map satisfying

$$
q(a u+b v)=a^{2} q(u)+b^{2} q(v)+a b f(u, v)
$$

for all $a, b \in K$ and $u, v \in V$. Such a map is called a quadratic form on $V$. On setting $a=b=1$ and $u=v$ we obtain $f(u, u)=0$ for all $u \in V$, and so $f$ is a symplectic form on $V$. If this form $f$ is non-degenerate, we say that the quadratic form $q$ is non-degenerate. The group of non-singular maps $\alpha: V \rightarrow V$ which satisfy

$$
q(\alpha(v))=q(v)
$$

for all $v \in V$ is called the orthogonal group on $V$ and is denoted by $O(V)$. Clearly $O(V) \subseteq S p(V)$.

Let $U$ be a subspace of $V$. Then the orthogonal complement of $U$ in $V$ is the subspace

$$
U^{\perp}=\{v \in V: f(u, v)=0 \text { for all } u \in U\}
$$

In particular, the radical of $V$ is the subspace

$$
R(V)=V^{\perp}=\{v \in V: f(u, v)=0 \text { for all } u \in V\}
$$

We say that $V$ is non-degenerate, if $R(V)=0$.
Lemma 1.3.1 Let $U$ be a subspace of the symplectic space $V$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Dim} U^{\perp} \geq \operatorname{Dim} V-\operatorname{Dim} U
$$

Furthermore, if $U$ is non-degenerate, then $V=U \perp U^{\perp}$,

Proof. Let $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\}$ be a basis of $U$. Then $U^{\perp}$ is the solution space of the $k$ linear equations $f\left(u_{i}, x\right)=0$ and

$$
\operatorname{Dim} U^{\perp} \geq \operatorname{Dim} V-k=\operatorname{Dim} V-\operatorname{Dim} U
$$

If $U$ is non-degenerate, then $U \cap U^{\perp}=R(U)=0$ and

$$
\operatorname{Dim}\left(U+U^{\perp}\right)=\operatorname{Dim} U+\operatorname{Dim} U^{\perp} \geq \operatorname{Dim} V
$$

Thus $V=U \perp U^{\perp}$.
If $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ are elements of $V$ with $f\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)=1$, then we call the set $\left\{v_{1}, v_{2}\right\}$ a hyperbolic pair and the two dimensional symplectic space generated by a hyperbolic pair is called a hyperbolic plane. Clearly a hyperbolic plane is non-degenerate.

Theorem 1.3.2 Let $V$ be a symplectic space of dimension $n$ over with $\operatorname{Dim} R(V)=$ r. Then

$$
V=H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m} \perp R(V)
$$

where the $H_{i}$ are hyperbolic planes, and $V$ is uniquely determined up to isomorphism by the numbers $n$ and $r$. In particular, $n-r=2 m$ is even.

Proof. If $V=R(V)$, then there is nothing to prove. If $h_{1} \in V-R(V)$, then there is an element $h_{2}$ of $V$ with $\left(h_{1}, h_{2}\right)=1$ and $H_{1}=<h_{1}, h_{2}>$ is a hyperbolic plane. So

$$
V=H_{1} \perp H_{1}^{\perp} \quad \text { and } \quad R(V)=R\left(H_{1}\right) \perp R\left(H_{1}^{\perp}\right)=R\left(H_{1}^{\perp}\right)
$$

by Lemma 1.3.1. The result follows by induction on $n$.

Lemma 1.3.3 Let $V$ be a non-degenerate sympletic space and $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right\}$ be a linearly independent set of $V$ with $\left(x_{i}, x_{j}\right)=0$ for $i \neq j$. Then there exists a linearly independent set $\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}\right\}$ of $V$ such that $H_{i}=<x_{i}, y_{i}>$ is a hyperbolic plane and

$$
V=H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{r} \perp V^{\prime}
$$

for some subspace $V^{\prime}$ of $V$.
Proof. Let * be the linear map from $V$ to its dual $V^{*}$ such that

$$
*: v \rightarrow v^{*}
$$

where $v^{*}(w)=f(v, w)$ for all $w \in V$. Then $v^{*}=0$ if and only if $v \in R(V)$. So * is a bijective linear map from $V$ to $V^{*}$, because $R(V)=0$ and $\operatorname{Dim} V=$ Dim $V^{*}$. Hence, there exists an element $y_{1}$ of $V$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}^{*}\left(y_{1}\right)=f\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right)=1 \text { and } \\
& x_{1}^{*}\left(y_{1}\right)=f\left(x_{i}, y_{1}\right)=0 \text { for } i \in\{2, \ldots, r\}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $H_{1}=<x_{1}, y_{1}>$ is a hyperbolic plane and by Lemma 1.3.1 $V=H_{1} \perp H_{1}^{\perp}$. Furthermore, $x_{i} \in H_{1}^{\perp}$ for $i \in\{2, \ldots, r\}$ and $H_{1}^{\perp}$ is non- degenerate, because

$$
0=R(V)=R\left(H_{1}\right) \perp R\left(H_{1}^{\perp}\right)
$$

The result follows by induction on $r$.
Lemma 1.3.4 Let $V$ be a non-degenerate symplectic space. Let $U_{1}$ and $U_{2}$ be subspaces of $V$ and let $\gamma$ be an isometry from $U_{1}$ to $U_{2}$. Then there is an isometry $\Gamma$ from $V$ to itself with $\Gamma=\gamma$ on $U_{1}$.

Proof. By Theorem 1.3.2, there exist hyperbolic planes $H_{1}, \ldots, H_{m}$ such that

$$
U_{1}=H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m} \perp R\left(U_{1}\right)
$$

Furthermore, $R\left(U_{2}\right)=\gamma\left(R\left(U_{1}\right)\right)$ and if we let $H_{i}^{\prime}=\gamma\left(H_{i}\right)$, then

$$
U_{2}=H_{1}^{\prime} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m}^{\prime} \perp R\left(U_{2}\right)
$$

So $H=H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m}$ and $H^{\prime}=H_{1}^{\prime} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m}^{\prime}$ are non-degenerate. Let $L=H^{\perp}$ and $L^{\prime}=H^{\prime \perp}$. Then, by Lemma 1.3.1,

$$
V=H \perp L=H^{\prime} \perp L^{\prime}
$$

and $R(L)=R\left(L^{\prime}\right)=0$, because

$$
0=R(V)=R(H) \perp R(L)=R\left(H^{\prime}\right) \perp R\left(L^{\prime}\right)
$$

Clearly $R\left(U_{1}\right) \subseteq H^{\perp}=L$ and $R\left(U_{2}\right) \subseteq H^{\prime \perp}=L^{\prime}$. So if we choose a basis $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right\}$ for $R\left(U_{1}\right)$, then $f\left(x_{i}, x_{j}\right)=0$ for all $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, r\}$ and, by Lemma 1.3.3,

$$
L=S_{1} \perp \cdots \perp S_{\mathrm{r}} \perp M,
$$

where $S_{i}=<x_{i}, y_{i}>$ and $f\left(x_{i}, y_{i}\right)=1$. Similarly

$$
L^{\prime}=S_{1}^{\prime} \perp \cdots \perp S_{r}^{\prime} \perp M^{\prime}
$$

where $S_{i}^{\prime}=\left\langle\gamma\left(x_{i}\right), y_{i}^{\prime}\right\rangle$ and $\left(\gamma\left(x_{i}\right), y_{i}^{\prime}\right)=1$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
V=H \perp L & =H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m} \perp S_{1} \perp \cdots \perp S_{r} \perp M \\
& =H_{1}^{\prime} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m}^{\prime} \perp S_{1}^{\prime} \perp \cdots \perp S_{r}^{\prime} \perp M^{\prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now $R(M) \subseteq R(L)=0$ and $R\left(M^{\prime}\right) \subseteq R\left(L^{\prime}\right)=0$. So $M$ and $M^{\prime}$ are nondegenerate symplectic spaces of equal dimension. Hence $M$ is isomorphic to $M^{\prime}$, by Theorem 1.3.2, and there is an isometry $\delta$ from $M$ to $M^{\prime}$. Therefore the linear map $\Gamma$ defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Gamma(h) & =\gamma(h) \quad \text { for all } h \in H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{m}, \\
\Gamma\left(x_{i}\right) & =\gamma\left(x_{i}\right) \quad(1 \leq i \leq r) \\
\Gamma\left(y_{i}\right) & =\gamma\left(y_{i}^{\prime}\right) \quad(1 \leq i \leq r), \\
\Gamma(m) & =\delta(m) \quad \text { for all } m \in M .
\end{aligned}
$$

is an isometry of $V$ to itself with $\Gamma=\gamma$ on $U_{1}$.
Suppose that $U$ is a subspace of a symplectic space $V$. Then $U$ is called isotropic, if $\left(u, u^{\prime}\right)=0$ for all $u, u^{\prime} \in U$.

Theorem 1.3.5 Let $V$ be a non-degenerate sympletic space of dimension $2 n$. If $U$ is an isotropic subspace of $V$, then Dim $U \leq n$ and $U$ is contained in an isotropic subspace of dimension $n$ of $V$.

Proof. Let $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{r}\right\}$ be a basis for $U$. By Lemma 1.3.3,

$$
V=H_{1} \perp \cdots \perp H_{r} \perp V^{\prime}
$$

with hyperbolic planes $H_{i}=\left\langle u_{i}, v_{i}\right\rangle$. So $2 r \leq \operatorname{Dim} V=2 n$. By Theorem 1.3.2,

$$
V=V_{1} \perp \cdots \perp V_{n}
$$

with hyperbolic planes $V_{i}=\left\langle x_{i}, y_{i}\right\rangle$. The linear map $\gamma$ with $\gamma\left(u_{i}\right)=x_{i}$ for ( $1 \leq i \leq r$ ) is an isometry from $U$ onto $\left\langle x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right\rangle$. Let $\Gamma$ be the isometry
of $V$, whose existence is guaranteed by Lemma 1.3.4, which restricts to $\gamma$. Then

$$
\Gamma(U)=\gamma(U)=\left\langle x_{1}, \ldots, x_{\tau}\right\rangle \subseteq\left\langle x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\rangle
$$

and $U$ lies in the isotropic subspace $\left.\Gamma^{-1}\left(<x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\rangle\right)$.

### 1.4 Special p-groups

In this section we shall prove some well-known facts about extra-special $p$ groups, and some additional facts that will prove useful later.

Let $G$ be a non-abelian $p$-group. If $Z(G)=G^{\prime}=\Phi(G)$ is elementary abelian, then $G$ is called special. If $G$ is a special $p$-group and the centre of $G$ has order $p$, then $G$ is called extra-special.

Theorem 1.4.1 Let $G$ be an extra-special p-group. Then the following statements hold.
(a) If $G^{\prime}=\langle c\rangle$, then $G / Z(G)$ can be viewed as a non-degenerate symplectic space over $G F(p)$ with alternating bilinear form $f$ defined by

$$
f\left(\bar{g}_{1}, \bar{g}_{2}\right)=a,
$$

where $\bar{g}_{1}=g_{1} Z(G), \bar{g}_{2}=g_{2} Z(G)$ and $\left[g_{1}, g_{2}\right]=c^{a}$;
(b) $G / Z(G)$ has order $p^{2 m}$;
(c) $G$ is a central product of non-abelian groups of order $p^{3}$ with amalgamted centres;
(d) Every maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ has order $p^{m+1}$.

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 13.7 pages $353-355$ ]. (a) Clearly $f$ is well-defined and since $G$ has class 2,

$$
\left[g_{1} g_{2}, g_{3}\right]=\left[g_{1}, g_{3}\right]\left[g_{2}, g_{3}\right] \text { and }\left[g_{1}, g_{2} g_{3}\right]=\left[g_{1}, g_{2}\right]\left[g_{1}, g_{3}\right]
$$

for all $g_{i} \in G$. Thus $G / Z(G)$ can be viewed as a symplectic space over $G F(p)$, because $[g, g]=1$ for all $g \in G$. Furthermore, the symplectic space $G / Z(G)$ is non-degenerate, because $[g, h]=1$ for all $h \in G$ if and only if $g \in Z(G)$.
(b) By Theorem 1.3.2,

$$
\operatorname{Dim} G / Z(G)=2 m
$$

and $G / Z(G)$ has order $p^{2 m}$.
(c) By Theorem 1.3.2, $G / Z(G)$ has a basis $\left\{\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{m}, \bar{y}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{y}_{m}\right\}$ such that

$$
f\left(\bar{x}_{i}, \bar{y}_{i}\right)=1 \text { and } f\left(\bar{x}_{i}, \bar{x}_{i}\right)=f\left(\tilde{y}_{i}, \tilde{y}_{i}\right)=0
$$

for all $i$ and

$$
f\left(\bar{x}_{i}, \bar{x}_{j}\right)=f\left(\bar{y}_{i}, \bar{y}_{j}\right)=f\left(\bar{x}_{i}, \bar{y}_{j}\right)=0
$$

for $i \neq j$.
Let $\bar{x}_{i}=x_{i} Z(G)$ and $\bar{y}_{j}=y_{j} Z(G)$. Then $G$ is a central product of the nonabelian groups $G_{i}=<x_{i}, y_{i}, Z(G)>$ of order $p^{3}$ with amalgamated centres.
(d) If $M$ is a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$, then $Z(G) \subseteq M$ and $M / Z(G)$ is a subspace of $G / Z(G)$ with

$$
f\left(\bar{m}_{1}, \bar{m}_{2}\right)=0
$$

for all $\bar{m}_{1}, \bar{m}_{2} \in M / Z(G)$. So $M / Z(G)$ is a maximal isotropic subspace of $G / Z(G)$ and, by Theorem $1.3 .5, M$ has order $p^{m+1}$.

Theorem 1.4.2 Let $G$ be an extra-special 2-group of order $2^{2 m+1}$. Then one of the following two cases arises :
(i) $G$ is a central product of $m$ dihedral groups of order 8 with amalgamated centres.
(ii) $G$ is a central product of $m-1$ dihedral groups of order 8 and a quarternion group of order 8 with amalgamated centres.

In case (i) $G$ has maximal abelian normal subgroups of type $(4, \underbrace{2, \ldots, 2})$ and type $(\underbrace{2, \ldots, 2})$; in case (ii) every maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ is of type $(4, \underbrace{m+1}_{m-1}$,

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 13.8, pages 355-356]. By Theorem 1.4.1, G is a central product of non-abelian groups of order 8 . So in order to prove that one of the two cases arises we need only show that a central product of two quarternion groups with amalgamated centres can be regarded as a central product of two dihedral groups with amalgamated centres.

Let $G$ be the central product of $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ with amalgamated centres, where

$$
Q_{1}=<q_{1}, q_{2} \mid q_{1}^{4}=q_{2}^{4}=1, q_{1}^{q_{2}}=q_{1}^{-1}, q_{1}^{2}=q_{2}^{2}>
$$

and

$$
Q_{2}=<q_{3}, q_{4} \mid q_{3}^{4}=q_{4}^{4}=1, q_{3}^{q_{4}}=q_{3}^{-1}, q_{3}^{2}=q_{4}^{2}>
$$

Then $G$ can be regarded as a central product of $D_{1}=\left\langle d_{1}, d_{2}\right\rangle$ and $D_{2}=<$ $d_{3}, d_{4}>$ with amalgamated centres, where

$$
d_{1}=q_{1} q_{4}, d_{2}=q_{2} q_{4}, d_{3}=q_{1} q_{2} q_{3}, d_{4}=q_{1} q_{2} q_{3} q_{4}
$$

Note that $d_{1}, d_{2}$ and $d_{3}, d_{4}$ of $D_{1}$ and $D_{2}$ respectively are not the conventional generators of the dihedral group. In particular, $d_{i}^{2}=1$ for $i \in\{1,2,3,4\}$.

To complete the proof we begin by showing that every extra special 2 -group $G$ of order $2^{2 m+1}$ has an abelian normal subgroup of type $(4, \underbrace{2, \ldots, 2}_{m-1})$. Since $G$ is non-abelian, there is an element $a$ of $G$ of order 4. Furthermore, $\langle a\rangle \triangleleft G$, since $G^{\prime}=\left\langle a^{2}\right\rangle$. Let $U$ be a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ containing $a$. Then $|U|=2^{m+1}$ by Theorem 1.4.1 and $U$ is an abelian normal subgroup of $G$ of type $(4, \underbrace{2, \ldots, 2}_{m-1})$, because $o(a)=4$ and the exponent of $G / Z(G)$ is 2.

Let $G$ be a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m}$ of order 8 with amalgamated centres, where $\left.D_{i}=<a_{i}, b_{i}\right\rangle$ with $a_{i}^{2}=1$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. Then clearly $<Z(G), a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}>$ is a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ of type $(\underbrace{2, \ldots, 2}_{m+1})$.
Let $G$ be a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m-1}$ of order 8 and a quarternion group $Q$ of order 8 with amalgamated centres. Let $U$ be a maximal abelian normal subgroup $G$. Then every element $a$ of $U$ can be written $a=a_{1} a_{2}$ with $a_{1} \in D_{1} \ldots D_{m-1}$ and $a_{2} \in Q$; where $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are uniquely determined upto factors of $Z(G)$. We define $U_{i}(i=1,2)$ as the subgroup generated by all the $a_{1}$. Then $U_{1}$ and $U_{2}$ are abelian normal
subgroups of $D_{1} \ldots D_{m-1}$ and $Q$ respectively. Since $U \subseteq U_{1} U_{2}$ and

$$
U_{1} \cap U_{2}=Z(G)
$$

it follows with help from Theorem 1.4.1 that

$$
2^{m+1}=|U| \subseteq \frac{\left|U_{1}\right|\left|U_{2}\right|}{2} \subseteq \frac{2^{m} 2^{2}}{2}=2^{m+1}
$$

So $U=U_{1} U_{2}$ and $U_{2}$ is a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $Q$. So $U_{2}$ is cyclic of order 4 and the exponent of $U$ is 4 .

Theorem 1.4.3 Let $G$ be an extra-special 2 -group of order $2^{2 m+1}$ and let $Z(G)=<c>$. Let $q$ be the function from $G / Z(G)$, regarded as a vector space over $G F(2)$, into $G F(2)$ defined by

$$
q(\bar{g})=a
$$

where $\bar{g}=g Z(G) \in G / Z(G)$ and $g^{2}=c^{a}$. Then $q$ is a quadratic form on $G / Z(G)$ satisfying the following statements.
(a) If $G$ is a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m}$ of order 8 , then $G / Z(G)$ has a basis $\left\{\bar{a}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{a}_{m}, \bar{b}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{b}_{m}\right\}$ satisfying the following conditions :

$$
q\left(\bar{a}_{i}\right)=q\left(\bar{b}_{i}\right)=0 \text { and } f\left(\bar{a}_{i}, \bar{b}_{j}\right)=\delta_{i j} \text { for all } i, j
$$

(b) If $G$ is a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m-1}$ of order 8 and a quarternion group of order 8 then $G / Z(G)$ has a basis

$$
\left\{\bar{a}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{a}_{m-1}, \bar{b}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{b}_{m-1}, \bar{x}, \bar{y}\right\}
$$

satisfying the following conditions:

$$
\begin{gathered}
q\left(\bar{a}_{i}\right)=q\left(\bar{b}_{i}\right)=f\left(\bar{a}_{i}, \bar{x}\right)=f\left(\bar{a}_{i}, \bar{y}\right)=f\left(\bar{b}_{i}, \bar{x}\right)=f\left(\bar{b}_{i}, \bar{y}\right)=0 \\
f\left(\bar{a}_{i}, \bar{b}_{j}\right)=\delta_{i j} \text { for all } i, j \text { and } \\
q(\bar{x})=q(\bar{y})=f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})=1
\end{gathered}
$$

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 13.8(c) and Bemerkungen 13.9, pages 355-357] The function $q$ is clearly well-defined on $G / Z(G)$. Since $(g h)=g^{2} h^{2}[h, g]$ for all $g, h \in G$, it follows that

$$
q(\bar{x}, \bar{y})=q(\bar{x})+q(\bar{y})+f(\bar{y}, \bar{x})
$$

where $f$ is the alternating bilinear form of Theorem 1.4.1. So $q$ is a quadratic form and the result follows from Theorem 1.4.2 and the systems of generators and relations given above for a quarternion and dihedral group.

Theorem 1.4.4 Let $G$ be an extra-special 2 -group of order $2^{2 m+1}$. Let $A=$ $A u t(G)$ and let $I=\operatorname{Inn}(G)$. Then
(a) $A / I$ is isomorphic to a subgroup of $O(q)$, the orthogonal group for the quadratic form $q$ associated with $G$.
(b) If $G$ is a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m}$ of order 8 with amalgamated centres, then

$$
|A / I| \mid 2^{(2 m(2 m-2) / 4)+1}\left(2^{m}-1\right) \Pi_{i=1}^{m-1}\left(2^{2 i}-1\right)
$$

(c) If $G$ is a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, \ldots, D_{m-1}$ of order 8 and $Q$ is a quarternion group of order 8 with amalgamated centres, then

$$
|A / I| \mid 2^{(2 m(2 m-2) / 4)+1}\left(2^{m}+1\right) \Pi_{i=1}^{m-1}\left(2^{2 i}-1\right) ;
$$

(d) If $G$ is a central product of dihedral groups $D_{1}, D_{2}, D_{3}$ of order 8 with amalgamated centres, then $A / I$ is isomorphic to a subgroup of $S_{8}$.

Proof. (a) Doerk and Hawkes [5, (20.8) Theorem, page 81] Let $\alpha \in \operatorname{Aut}(G)$ and let $\bar{\alpha}$ be the automorphism induced by $\alpha$ on $G / Z(G)$. Then $\bar{\alpha} \in O(q)$ and the map $\alpha \rightarrow \bar{\alpha}$ defines a homomorphism from $\operatorname{Aut}(G)$ to $O(q)$, since $\alpha$ centralizes $Z(G)$. So in order to show that $A / I$ is isomorphic to a subgroup of $O(q)$, we need to prove that

$$
C_{A u t(G)}(G / Z(G))=\operatorname{Inn}(G) .
$$

Let $Z$ denote the centre of $G$, and let $\left\{x_{1} Z, \ldots, x_{2 m} Z\right\}$ be a basis for $G / Z(G)$. If $\alpha \in C_{A u t(G)}(G / Z(G))$, then $\alpha\left(x_{i} Z\right)=x_{i} Z$ and so $\alpha\left(x_{i}\right)=x_{i} z_{i}$ for some $z_{i} \in Z$ : furthermore, $\alpha$ is uniquely determined by the sequence ( $z_{1}, \ldots, z_{2 m}$ ) because $\left.G=<x_{1}, \ldots, x_{2 m}\right\rangle$. Therefore the number of distinct $\alpha$ 's in $C_{A u t(G)}(G / Z(G))$ is bounded above by $2^{2 m}$, the number of such sequences. However, $C_{\text {Aut }(G)}(G / Z(G))$ obviously contains every inner automorphism of $G$ and the result follows.
(b) , (c) and (d) now follow from Theorem 1.4.3 and Kleidman and Liebeck [4, Proposition 2.5.5 and Proposition 2.9.1, Pages 29 and 43].

Theorem 1.4.5 Let $G$ be an extra-special $p$-group of order $p^{2 m+1}$. Then $G$ has the following irreducible characters :
(a) $p^{2 m}$ linear characters
(b) $p-1$ faithful irreducible characters of degree $p^{m}$, which can be described in the following way. Let $U$ be a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ and $\lambda \neq 1_{z(G)}$ be a linear character of the $Z(G)$. If $\mu$ is an extension of $\lambda$ in $U$, then $\mu^{G}$ is an irreducible character of $G$. Every linear character $\lambda \neq 1_{z(a)}$ gives rise to exactly one irreducible character $\chi$ in this way and $\chi_{z(G)}=\chi(1) \lambda$.
Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 16.4, pages 562-563] Since $\left|G / G^{\prime}\right|=p^{2 m}$, the group $G$ has exactly $p^{2 m}$ linear characters. Let $\lambda$ be a linear character of $Z(G)$ with $\lambda \neq 1$ and let $U$ be a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$. Then $U$ has order $p^{m+1}$, by Theorem 1.4.1, and $\lambda$ extends to $U$. Suppose that $\mu \in \operatorname{Irr}(U)$ is an extension of $\lambda$. Then

$$
\mu^{G}(g)=\frac{1}{|U|} \sum_{x \in G} \mu^{\circ}\left(x^{-1} g x\right),
$$

where $\mu^{\circ}(u)=\mu(u)$ for $u \in U$ and $\mu^{\circ}(s)=0$ for $s \in G-U$. If $g \notin U$, then $x^{-1} g x \notin U$ for all $x \in G$ and $\mu^{G}(g)=0$. If $g \in U$, then

$$
\mu^{G}(g)=\frac{1}{|U|} \sum_{x \in G} \mu(g[g, x])=\frac{\mu(g)}{|U|} \sum_{x \in G} \lambda([g, x]),
$$

because $[g, x] \in G^{\prime}=Z(G)$. Since $G$ has class 2, the map $x \rightarrow[g, x]$ is a homomorphism from $G$ to $G^{\prime}$. For $g \in Z(G)$ we have

$$
\mu^{G}(g)=\frac{\lambda(g)}{|U|}|G|=p^{m} \lambda(g)=\mu^{G}(1) \lambda(g) .
$$

For $g \notin Z(G)$ with help from the orthogonality relations and remembering that $\lambda \neq 1_{z(\sigma)}$ we have

$$
\mu^{G}(g)=p^{2 m} \frac{\mu(g)}{|U|} \sum_{y \in Z(G)} \lambda(y)=p^{m} \mu(g)<\lambda, 1_{z(G)}>=0 .
$$

So $\mu^{G}$ does not depend on the choice of the maximal abelian normal subgroup $U$ or on the choice of the extension $\mu$ of $\lambda$. The irreducibility of $\mu^{G}$ follows from

$$
\begin{aligned}
<\mu^{G}, \mu^{G}> & =\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in Z(G)} \mu^{G}(g) \mu^{G}\left(g^{-1}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in Z(G)} p^{2 m} \lambda(g) \lambda\left(g^{-1}\right)=\frac{p^{2 m+1}}{|G|}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, the sum of the squares of the degrees of the irreducible characters listed above is equal to the order of $G$ and as a result we have found all the irreducible characters of $G$.

Lemma 1.4.6 Let $G$ be an extra-special $p$-group of order $p^{2 m+1}$ and let $H$ be an abelian subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $H \cap Z(G)=1$ and $1_{H} \uparrow G$ is multiplicity-free. Then $H Z(G)$ is a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$ and $H$ has order $p^{m}$.

Proof. Clearly, $H Z(G)=H \times Z(G)$ is a normal abelian subgroup of $G$ and

$$
1_{H} \uparrow H Z(G)=1_{H Z(G)}+\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{r-1}
$$

where each $\lambda_{i}$ restricts to a distinct non-linear character of $Z(G)$. If $H Z(G)$ is not a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $G$. Then there exists a maximal abelian subgroup $U$ of $G$ containing $H Z(G)$. Furthermore, if $n=\mid U$ : $H Z(G) \mid$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
1_{H} \uparrow U= & \left(1_{H} \uparrow H Z(G)\right) \uparrow U \\
= & 1_{U}+\mu_{1}+\cdots+\mu_{n-1} \\
& +\lambda_{11}+\cdots+\lambda_{1 n}+\cdots+\lambda_{(r-1) 1}+\cdots+\lambda_{(r-1) n}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\lambda_{i j}$ restricts to $\lambda_{i}$ for all $j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and $i \in\{1, \ldots, r-1\}$, and by Theorem 1.4.5 every non-linear irreducible character of $G$ will appear as a constituent of $1_{H} \uparrow G$ with multiplicity $n$. The proof is complete.

Lemma 1.4.7 Let $G$ be a non-abelian $p$-group. Suppose that $\Phi(G)$ has order $p$ and $Z(G)$ has order $p^{k+1}$. Then $G=Q Z(G)$, where $Q$ is extra-special and $Q \cap Z(G)=\Phi(G)$. Furthermore, the restriction of every irreducible character of $G$ to $Q$ is irreducible. If $\theta$ is an irreducible character of $Q$, then there are exactly $p^{k}$ irreducible characters of $G$, whose restriction to $Q$ equals $\theta$.

Proof. We can view $G / \Phi(G)$ as a vector space over $G F(p)$. Since $\Phi(G) \subseteq$ $Z(G)$, the group $Z(G) / \Phi(G)$ can be viewed as a subspace of $G / \Phi(G)$. If $Q / \Phi(G)$ is a complementary subspace of $Z(G) / \Phi(G)$ in $G / \Phi(G)$, then

$$
G=Q Z(G) \text { and } Q \cap Z(G)=\Phi(G) .
$$

Furthermore, $Z(Q)=\Phi(G)$, because $Z(Q) \subseteq Z(G)$. Thus $Q$ is non- abelian, because $G$ is non-abelian, and $Q^{\prime}$ must equal $\Phi(G)$. Finally, it is not difficult to see that $\Phi(Q)$ must also equal $\Phi(G)$, establishing our claim that $Q$ is extra-special. Let $D=Q \times Z(G)$ and let

$$
\bar{Q}=\{(q, 1) \mid q \in Q\} \text { and } \overline{Z(G)}=\{(1, z) \mid z \in Z(G)\} .
$$

Suppose that $\gamma$ is a map from $D$ to $G$ defined by $\gamma((q, z))=q z$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\gamma\left(\left(q_{1}, z_{1}\right)\left(q_{2}, z_{2}\right)\right) & =\gamma\left(\left(q_{1} q_{2}, z_{1} z_{2}\right)\right)=q_{1} q_{2} z_{1} z_{2}=q_{1} z_{1} q_{2} z_{2} \\
& =\gamma\left(\left(q_{1}, z_{1}\right)\right) \gamma\left(\left(q_{2}, z_{2}\right)\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $q_{i} \in Q$ and $z_{i} \in Z(G)$. So $\gamma$ is an epimorphism from $D$ to $G$ with kernel $K=\left\{\left(k, k^{-1}\right) \mid k \in Q \cap Z(G)\right\}$. Furthermore, the map

$$
\Gamma: D / K=(\bar{Q} K / K)(\overline{Z(G)} K / K) \rightarrow G=Q Z(G)
$$

defined by $\Gamma((q, z) K)=\gamma((q, z))=q z$ is an isomorphism with

$$
\Gamma(\bar{Q} K / K)=Q
$$

So every irreducible character of $G$ restricts to an irreducible character of $Q$ if and only if every irreducible character of $D / K$ restricts to an irreducible character of $\bar{Q} K / K$.

If $\hat{\chi} \in \operatorname{Irr}(D / K)$, then there exists a $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(D)$ such that $\operatorname{ker} \chi \supseteq K$ and $\hat{\chi}(d K)=\chi(d)$ for all $d \in D$. If $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(D)$, then $\chi((q, z))=\theta(q) \phi(z)$, where $\theta \in \operatorname{Irr}(Q)$ and $\phi \in \operatorname{Irr}(Z(G))$, for all $q \in Q$ and $z \in Z(G)$. So

$$
\hat{\chi}((q, 1) K)=\chi((q, 1))=\theta(q) \phi(1)=\theta(q)
$$

for all $q \in Q$. Thus the restriction of $\bar{\chi}$ to $\bar{Q} K / K$ is irreducible, because

$$
<\hat{\chi}_{\bar{Q} K / K}, \hat{\chi}_{\bar{Q} K / K}>=<\theta, \theta>=1
$$

If $\theta$ is an irreducible character of $Q$, then $\theta^{G}$ has degree

$$
\theta(1)|G: Q|=\theta(1) p^{k}
$$

But from above we know that every irreducible constituent of $\theta^{G}$ is an extension of $\theta$ to $G$. So every irreducible constituent of $\theta^{G}$ occurs with multiplicity one and has degree $\theta(1)$. Thus $G$ has exactly $p^{k}$ irreducible characters, whose restriction to $Q$ equals $\theta$.

Lemma 1.4.8 Let $G$ be a non-abelian special p-group and let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of maximal subgroups of $Z(G)$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G))=\bigcup_{M \in \mathcal{M}}(\operatorname{Irr}(G / M)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G)))
$$

Furthermore if $M \in \mathcal{M}$, then $G / M$ is a non- abelian p-group and $\Phi(G / M)$ has order $p$. Thus

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G))=\bigcup_{M \in \mathcal{M}}\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / M) \mid \chi(1) \neq 1\}
$$

Proof. Suppose that $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Then $\chi_{z(G)}=\chi(1) \lambda$ for some $\lambda \in$ $\operatorname{Irr}(Z(G))$ and $\operatorname{ker} \lambda \supseteq M_{1}$ for some $M_{1} \in \mathcal{M}$, since $Z(G)$ is elementary abelian. So $\operatorname{ker} \chi \supseteq M_{1}$. Suppose that $\operatorname{ker} \chi \supseteq M_{2}$, where $M_{1} \neq M_{2} \in \mathcal{M}$. Then $\operatorname{ker} \chi \supseteq M_{1} M_{2}=Z(G)$ and

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G))=\bigcup_{M \in \mathcal{M}}(\operatorname{Irr}(G / M)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G)))
$$

Since $M \nsupseteq G^{\prime}$, the factor group $G / M$ is a non-abelian $p$-group. Furthermore, $\Phi(G / M)=\Phi(G) / M=Z(G) / M$ has order $p$, because $M$ is a maximal subgroup of the elementary abelian $p$-group $Z(G)$. So by Lemma 1.4.7 $G=(Q / M) Z(G / M)$, where $Q / M$ is extra-special and $Q / M \cap Z(G / M)=$ $\Phi(G / M)$ and the restriction of every irreducible character of $G$ to $Q$ is irreducible. Thus the kernel of an irreducible character of $G / M$ does not contain $Z(G)$ if and only if it's restriction to $Q / M$ is faithful. The result follows by Theorem 1.4.5.

### 1.5 Frobenius groups

Let $G$ be a finite group and let $C$ be a subgroup of $G$, with $1<C<G$. Assume that $C \cap C^{g}=1$ whenever $g \in G-C$. Then $C$ is a Frobenius complement in $G$. A group which contains a Frobenius complement is called a Frobenius group.

Lemma 1.5.1 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$. Then $|C|$ divides $|G: C|-1$.

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 8.3 page 497] Since $\bigcap_{g \in G} C^{g}=1$, we can view $G$ as a permutation group acting on the set of right cosets of $C$ in $G$. In particular, we can view $C$ as a permutation group acting on the set of right cosets of $C$ in $G$. Suppose that $C h \neq C$ is a right coset of $C$ in $G$. Then $C \cap C^{h}=1$ is the stabilizer of $C h$ in $C$ and $C h$ is contained in an orbit of length $|C|$. The result follows.

Lemma 1.5.2 Let $C$ be a Frobenius complement in $G$. Let

$$
N=\left(G-\bigcup_{g \in G} C^{g}\right) \cup\{1\}
$$

Then $|N|=|G: C|$. If $M \triangleleft G$ with $M \cap C=1$, then $M \subseteq N$.
Proof. Isaacs [1, (7.3) Lemma, page 100]. Since $C=N_{G}(C)$, there are $|G: C|$ distinct subgroups of the form $C^{g}$. These contain exactly $|G: C|(|C|-1)$ non- identity elements. The remaining elements of $G$ constitute the set $N$. We have

$$
|N|=|G|-|G: C|(|C|-1)=|G|-|G|+|G: C|=|G: C| .
$$

If $M \triangleleft G$ with $M \cap C=1$, then $M \cap C^{g}=1$ for all $g \in G$ and thus $M \subseteq N$. The proof is complete.

Lemma 1.5.3 Let $C$ be a Frobenius complement in $G$. Let $\theta$ be a class function of $C$ which satisfies $\theta(1)=0$. Then $\left(\theta^{G}\right)_{C}=\theta$.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (7.4) Lemma, page 100]. Let $1 \neq c \in C$. Then

$$
\theta^{G}(c)=\frac{1}{|C|} \sum_{x \in G} \theta^{\circ}\left(x c x^{-1}\right)
$$

where $\theta^{\circ}$ is defined by $\theta^{\circ}(c)=\theta(c)$ if $c \in C$ and $\theta^{\circ}(y)=0$ if $y \notin C$. If $\theta^{\circ}\left(x c x^{-1}\right) \neq 0$, then $1 \neq x c x^{-1} \in C \cap C^{x^{-1}}$ and $x \in C$. Then $\theta^{\circ}\left(x c x^{-1}\right)=$ $\theta(c)$. We have

$$
\theta^{G}(c)=\frac{1}{|C|} \sum_{x \in C} \theta(c)=\theta(c)
$$

Since $\theta^{G}(1)=|G: H| \theta(1)=0$, the proof is complete.
Theorem 1.5.4 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group and let $C$ be a Frobenius complement in $G$. Then $N=\left(G-\bigcup_{g \in G} C^{g}\right) \cup\{1\}$ is a normal subgroup of $G$ with $N C=G$ and $C \cap N=1$.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (7.2) Theorem, page 100-101]. Let $1_{C} \neq \varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(C)$ and write $\theta=\varphi-\varphi(1) 1_{C}$ so that $\theta(1)=0$. Now

$$
\left\langle\theta^{G}, \theta^{G}\right\rangle=\left\langle\theta,\left(\theta^{G}\right)_{C}\right\rangle=\langle\theta, \theta\rangle
$$

by Frobenius reciprocity and Lemma 1.5.3. Thus $\left\langle\theta^{G}, \theta^{G}\right\rangle=1+\varphi(1)^{2}$. Now $\left\langle\theta^{G}, 1_{G}\right\rangle=\left\langle\theta, 1_{C}\right\rangle=-\varphi(1)$. We may therefore write $\theta^{i}=\varphi^{*}-\varphi(1) 1_{G}$, where $\varphi^{*}$ is a class function of $G,\left\langle\varphi^{*}, 1_{G}\right\rangle=0$, and $1+\varphi(1)^{2}=\left\langle\varphi^{*}, \varphi^{*}\right\rangle+\varphi(1)^{2}$, so that $\left\langle\varphi^{*}, \varphi^{*}\right\rangle=1$. Since $\theta$ is a difference of characters, so is $\theta^{G}$ and hence $\varphi^{*}$ is a difference of characters also. Since $\left\langle\varphi^{*}, \varphi^{*}\right\rangle=1$, it follows that $\pm \varphi^{*} \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Furthermore, $c \in C$, then

$$
\varphi^{*}(c)=\theta^{c}(c)+\varphi(1)=\theta(c)+\varphi(1)=\varphi(c)
$$

In particular, $\varphi^{*}(1)>0$ and thus $\varphi^{*} \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. For every non-principal $\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(C)$, we have now chosen an extension, $\varphi^{*} \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Let $M=$ $\bigcap_{\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(C)} \operatorname{ker} \varphi^{*}$. If $m \in M \cap C$, then $\varphi(m)=\varphi^{*}(m)=\varphi^{*}(1)=\varphi(1)$ for all $\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(C)$ and thus $m=1$. By Lemma 1.5.2, $M \subseteq N$. Conversely, if $g \in G$ lies in no conjugate of $C$, then

$$
\varphi^{*}(g)-\varphi(1)=\theta^{G}(g)=0
$$

and $g \in \operatorname{ker} \varphi^{*}$. It follows that $M=N$ and hence the normal subgroup $M$ satisfies $|M|=|G: C|$. We have $|M C|=|M||C|=|G: C||C|=|G|$ and the result follows.

The normal subgroup whose existence is guaranteed by Theorem 1.5.4 is called the Frobenius kernel of $G$. If $T=\left\{g_{1}, \ldots, g_{j}\right\}$ is a right transversal for $C$ in $G$, then the decomposition

$$
G=N \cup C^{g_{1}} \cup \cdots \cup C^{g_{j}}
$$

into subgroups of $G$, any two of which have trivial intersection, is called the Frobenius partition of $G$.

### 1.6 Characters of Frobenius groups

We shall now go on to describe the irreducible characters of a Frobenius group.

Lemma 1.6.1 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius Kernel $N$. Then $C_{G}(n) \subseteq N$ for all $1 \neq n \in N$.

Proof. Suppose $g \in G-N$ is such that $n^{g}=n$ for some $1 \neq n \in N$. Then from the Frobenius partition of $G$, we see that there exixts an $h \in G$ with $g^{h}=c$ for some $c \in C$. Thus $m^{c}=m$, where $m=n^{h}$. Since $m \in G-C$,

$$
m^{-1} c m=c \in C \cap C^{m}=1
$$

and $g$ must equal the identity. In particular, $g \notin G-N$.
Theorem 1.6.2 Let $A$ be a group which acts on $\operatorname{Irr}(G)$ and on the set of conjugacy classes of $G$. Assume that $\chi(g)=\chi^{a}\left(g^{a}\right)$ for all $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$, $a \in A$ and $g \in G$; where $g^{a}$ is an element of $C l(g)^{a}$. Then for each $a \in A$, the number of fixed irreducible characters of $G$ is equal to the number of fixed classes.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (6.32) Theorem, pages 93-94], Let $\chi_{i}$ and $K_{j}$ be the irreducible characters and conjugacy classes of $G$ for $1 \leq i, j \leq k$. Choose $g_{j} \in K_{j}$ and write $g_{i}^{a}=g_{j}$ if $K_{i}^{a}=K_{j}$. Let $X=\left(\chi_{i}\left(g_{j}\right)\right)$, the character table of $G$, viewed as a matrix. For $a \in A$, let $P(a)=\left(p_{i j}\right)$, where $p_{i j}=0$ unless $\chi_{i}^{a}=\chi_{j}$, in which case $p_{i j}=1$. Similarly, define $Q(a)=\left(q_{i j}\right)$, where $q_{i j}=1$ if $K_{i}^{a}=K_{j}$ and is zero otherwise. The $(u, v)$ entry of the matrix $P(a) X$ is

$$
\sum_{i} p_{u i} \chi_{i}\left(g_{v}\right)=\chi_{u}^{a}\left(g_{v}\right)
$$

since only when $\chi_{i}=\chi_{u}^{a}$ is $p_{u i} \neq 0$. Similarly, the $(u, v)$ entry of the matrix $X Q(a)$ is

$$
\sum_{j} \chi_{u}\left(g_{j}\right) q_{j v}=\chi_{u}\left(g^{a^{-1}}\right)
$$

since only when $g_{j}=g_{u}^{a^{-1}}$ is $q_{\jmath v} \neq 0$. The hypothesis of the theorem now implies that $P(a) X=X Q(a)$. Thus $Q(a)=X^{-1} P(a) X$ since the orthogonality relations guarantee that $X$ is non-singular. We conclude that
$\operatorname{Trace}(P(a))=\operatorname{Trace}(Q(a))$. Since $\operatorname{Trace}(P(a))$ is the number of $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$ which $a$ fixes and $\operatorname{Trace}(Q(a))$ is the number of $a$ - fixed conjugacy classes, the proof is complete.

Theorem 1.6.3 Let $N \triangleleft G$ and assume that $C_{G}(n) \subseteq N$ for all $1 \neq n \in N$. Then for $\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(N)$, with $\varphi \neq 1_{N}$, we have $I_{G}(\varphi)=N$ and $\varphi \uparrow^{G} \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$.

Proof. Isaacs $\left[1,(6.34)(\right.$ a) Theorem pages 94$]$, Let $\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}(N), \varphi \neq 1_{N}$. To show that $\varphi^{G} \in \operatorname{Irr}(N)$, it suffices to show that $I_{G}(\varphi)=N$. Therefore by Theorem 1.6 .2 we need to show that no element $g \in G-N$ can normalize any non-trivial conjugacy class of $N$. Suppose then, $g \in G-N$ normalizes $\mathcal{K}$, a class of $N$. Let $k \in \mathcal{K}$. Then $k^{g} \in \mathcal{K}$ and thus $k^{g}=k^{n}$ for some $n \in N$. Therefore $g n^{-1} \in C(k)$. Since $g n^{-1} \notin N$ and $k \in N$, the hypothesis yields $k=1$ and thus $\mathcal{K}=\{1\}$. The result follows.

Theorem 1.6.4 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius Kernel $N$. Then $G$ has the following irreducible characters.
(a) The lifts of the irreducible characters of $G / N \cong C$.
(b) $\frac{|\operatorname{lrr}(N)|-1}{|C|}$ irreducible characters, of the following form $: \varphi \uparrow^{G}$, where $\varphi$ is a non-trivial character of $N$. Two non-trivial irreducible charcters of $N$, induce the same irreducible character of $G$ if and only if they are conjugate in $G$.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (6.34)(b) Theorem pages 94], Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$ with $N \nsubseteq$ ker $\chi$. Then $\chi_{N}$ has an irreducible constituent $\varphi \neq 1_{N}$. So $\chi$ is a constituent of $\varphi \uparrow^{G}$, by Frobenius reciprocity. But Lemma 1.6.1 and Theorem 1.6.3 state that $\varphi \uparrow^{G}$ is irreducible. Thus $\varphi \uparrow^{G}=\chi$. Now $\varphi$ has $|C|$ conjugates in $G$, since
$I_{G}(\varphi)=N$ by Theorem 1.6.3. So there are exactly $|C|$ irreducible characters of $N$, whose induced character equals $\chi$. The result follows.

### 1.7 Fixed-point free automorphisms

Suppose that $\alpha$ is an automorphism of $N$. Then we say that $\alpha$ is fixed-point free, if the only element of $N$ left fixed by $\alpha$ is the identity. A subgroup $C$ of $\operatorname{Aut}(N)$ is called fixed-point free, if every non-identity element of $C$ is a fixed-point free automorphism of $N$. The following results can be found in Huppert [2, Satz 8.5, page 497-506].

Lemma 1.7.1 The following statements are equivalent :
(a) $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius Kernel $N$.
(b) $G=N C$ with $C<G$ and $N \triangleleft G$. The mapping $\mu$ from $C$ into Aut( $N$ ) defined by $n^{c^{\mu}}=c^{-1} n c$ for $c \in C$ and $n \in N$ is an isomorphism from $C$ onto a fixed-point-free group of automorphisms of $N$.

Proof. (a) $\Rightarrow(b)$ : Let $c \in C$ and $n \in N$ with $n^{c}=n$. Then

$$
n^{-1} c n=c \in C \cap C^{n} .
$$

If $n \neq 1$, then $n \in G-C$ and $C \cap C^{n}=1$, so $c=1$. If $c \neq 1$, then $n \in C$ and thus $n=1$. The proof is complete.
(b) $\Rightarrow(a)$ : Let $g \in N \cap C$. Then $g=g^{g}$ and $g=1$, since we are assuming that $C$ acts fixed-point freely on $N$. So $N \cap C=1$ and $G=N C$ is a semidirect product of $N$ and $C$. Let $c_{1} \in C \cap C^{g}$ with $g \in G-C$. Then $g=c n$
with $c \in C$ and $1 \neq n \in N$. So $C^{g}=C^{n}$ and

$$
c_{1}=c_{2}^{n} \in C \cap C^{n}
$$

with $c_{2} \in C$. Since $N \triangleleft G$, we have

$$
c_{1} c_{2}^{-1}=\left[n, c_{2}^{-1}\right] \in N \cap C=1,
$$

and $c_{1}=c_{2}$. So $n^{c}=n$ and $c=1$, since $n \neq 1$. Thus $C \cap C^{g}=1$ and $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$.

Lemma 1.7.2 Let $\alpha$ be a fixed-point free automorphism of $N$. The map $\mu: N \rightarrow N$ with $\mu(n)=n^{-1} n^{\alpha}$ is a bijection.

Proof. Suppose that $n_{1}, n_{2} \in R$ such that

$$
n_{1}^{-1} n_{1}^{\alpha}=\mu\left(n_{1}\right)=\mu\left(n_{2}\right)=n_{2}^{-1} n_{2}^{\alpha} .
$$

Then $n_{1} n_{2}^{-1}=\left(n_{1} n_{2}^{-1}\right)^{\alpha}$ and $n_{1}=n_{2}$, because $\alpha$ acts fixed-point freely on $N$. The result follows.

Lemma 1.7.3 Let $C$ be a fixed-point free group of automorphisms of $N$. Suppose that $C$ has even order. Then $C$ has a unique element $c$ of order 2 and $n^{c}=n^{-1}$ for all $n \in N$. Moreover, $N$ must be abelian.

Proof. Let $c \in C$ with $O(c)=2$ and $\mu(c)$ be the bijective map from $N$ onto itself defined Lemma 1.7.2. Then for all $n \in N$ there exists an $m \in N$ such that $n=m^{-1} m^{c}$ and

$$
n^{c}=\left(m^{-1} m^{c}\right)^{c}=\left(m^{-1}\right)^{c} m^{c^{2}}=\left(m^{c}\right)^{-1} m=\left(m^{-1} m^{c}\right)^{-1}=n^{-1} .
$$

If $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are involutions of $C$. Then $c_{2}^{-1} c_{1} \in C_{C}(N)=1$. Thus $c_{1}=c_{2}$. Finally, $N$ is abelian, because it admits an automorphism that maps every element to its inverse.

Lemma 1.7.4 Let $\alpha$ be a fixed-point free automorphism of $N$ and let $R$ be a normal subgroup of $N$ with $R^{\alpha}=R$. Then $\alpha$ induces a fixed-point free automorphism on $R$ and $N / R$.

Proof. Clearly $\alpha$ acts fixed-point freely on $R$. So by Lemma 1.7.2

$$
R=\left\{r^{-1} r^{\alpha} \mid r \in R\right\}
$$

Now let $n \in N$ and $n R=n^{\alpha} R$. Then $n^{-1} n^{\alpha} \in R$, so $n^{-1} n^{\alpha}=r^{-1} r^{\alpha}$ for some $r \in R$. It follows that $n r^{-1}=\left(n r^{-1}\right)^{\alpha}$ and $n$ must equal $r$. Therefore $\alpha$ induces a fixed-point free automorphism $\bar{\alpha}$ on $N / R$ with $(n R)^{\alpha}=n^{\alpha} R$.

Lemma 1.7.5 Let $V$ be a vector space of any dimension over a field $K$ and let $C$ be a finite group of linear maps of $V$ into itself. Let $C$ be fixed point free, in other words $v c \neq v$ for all $1 \neq c \in C$ and $0 \neq v \in V$. Suppose that $|C|=p q$, where $p$ and $q$ are not neccssarily distinct primes. Then $C$ is cyclic.

Proof. If $p=q$ and $C$ is not cyclic, then $C$ has exactly $p+1$ subgroups $C_{i}$ of order $p$. Then $C=\bigcup_{i=1}^{p+1} C_{i}$ and $C_{i} \cap C j=1$ for $i \neq j$. If $p>q$ and $C$ not cyclic. Then $C$ has exactly one $p$-Sylow subgroup $C_{1}$ and $p$ distinct $q$-Sylow subgroups $C_{2}, \ldots, C_{p+1}$. Once again $C=\bigcap_{i=1}^{p+1} C_{i}$ and $C_{i} \cap C_{j}=1$ for $i \neq j$. We shall now consider the two cases simultaneously. Let $0 \neq v \in V$ and $1 \neq c^{\prime} \in C$. Then

$$
\left(\sum_{c \in C} v c\right) c^{\prime}=\sum_{c \in C} v c
$$

so, since $C$ is fixed point free, $\sum_{c \in C} v c=0$. We can show similarly that $\sum_{c \in C_{\mathrm{i}}} v c=0$. Hence

$$
0=\sum_{c \in C} v c=-p v+\sum_{i=1}^{p+1} \sum_{c \in C_{i}} v c=-p v
$$

and the characteristic of $K$ is $p$. Let $d \in C$ of order $p$. Since the characteristic of $K$ equals $p$ we have

$$
0=v\left(d^{p}-1\right)=v(d-1)^{p} .
$$

Therefore there is an $i$ with $0 \leq i<p$ and $v(d-1)^{i} \neq 0$, but $v(d-1)^{i+1}=0$. Thus $w=v(d-1)^{i}$ and $w d=w \neq 0$ contradicting our assumption that $C$ acts fixed-point freely on $V$.

Theorem 1.7.6 [Thompson] If $N$ has a fixed-point free automorphism of prime order, then $N$ is nilpotent.

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 8.13, page 502].
Lemma 1.7.7 Let $P$ be a non-cyclic $\boldsymbol{p}$-group for some prime $p>2$. Then $P$ contains an elementary abelian subgroup of order $p^{2}$.

Proof. We shall prove the result by induction on the order of $P$. If $P$ is a non-cyclic $p$-group of order $p^{2}$ then $P$ itself is elementary abelian. Assume $P$ is a non-cyclic $p$-group of order greater than $p^{2}$ and every non-cyclic $p$ group of order less than $P$ has an elementary abelian subgroup of order $p^{2}$. Let $Q$ be a normal subgroup of $P$ of order $p$. Suppose that $P / Q$ is cyclic. Then $P$ is abelian and every minimal generating set of $P$ has two elements. Thus $\Omega_{1}(P)$ is elementary abelian of order $p^{2}$. So we may assume that $P / Q$
is non-cyclic and as a result contains an elementary abelian subgroup $T / Q$ of order $p^{2}$. So $T^{\prime \prime} \subseteq Q$ and this fact combined with our assumption that $p>2$ ensures that

$$
(x y)^{p}=x^{p} y^{p}[x, y]^{\left(\frac{p}{2}\right)}=x^{p} y^{p} .
$$

So the map $t \rightarrow t^{p}$ is a homomorphism from $T$ to $Q$, whose kernel has exponent $p$ and order greater than or equal to $p^{2}$. Thus every subgroup of the kernel of order $p^{2}$ is elementary abelian. The result follows.

Theorem 1.7.8 Let $C$ be a fixed-point free group of automorphisms of $N$. Suppose that $C$ has odd order. Then every $p$-Sylow subgroup of $C$ is cyclic.

Proof. We can assume that $C \neq 1$. So $C$ contains an element of prime order, which induces a fixed point free automorphism of prime order on $N$. So $N$ is nilpotent by Theorem 1.7.6. Let $Q$ be a $p$-Sylow subgroup of the nilpotent group $N$. Then by Lemma 1.7.4 every element of $C$ induces a fixed-point free automorphism on $Q / \Phi(Q)$. So $C$ is isomorphic to a group of fixed- point free automorphisms of the elementary abelian group $Q / \Phi(Q)$. Since we can view $Q / \Phi(Q)$ as a vector space over $G F(p)$, Lemma 1.7.5 states that every subgroup of order $p q$ of $C$ is cyclic. So every $p$-Sylow subgroup of $C$ must be cyclic by Lemma 1.7.7. The proof is complete.

## Chapter 2

## Model subgroups

Let $G$ be a finite group and let $\operatorname{Ir}(G)$ be the set of irreducible characters of $G$. Suppose there exists a set $\mathcal{M}$ of monomial characters of $G$ satisfying

$$
\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi=\sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{M}} \tau
$$

Then we say that $\mathcal{M}$ is a model of length $n$ for $G$, where $n$ is the cardinality of $\mathcal{M}$.

### 2.1 Definition

Suppose that $G$ has a model of length 1 . Then a linear character $\lambda$ of a subgroup $H$ of $G$ exists such that

$$
\lambda \uparrow^{G}=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi
$$

By Frobenius reciprocity, we have $\left\langle\lambda, 1_{H}\right\rangle=\left\langle\lambda \uparrow^{G}, 1_{G}\right\rangle=1$. So $\lambda$ must be the trivial character of $H$. With this observation in mind, we shall call $H$ a
model subgroup of $G$ if

$$
1_{H} \uparrow^{G}=\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{lrr}(G)} \chi
$$

Theorem 2.1.1 Let $G$ be a finite group. Then $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ if and only if

$$
\sum_{h \in H} \chi(h)=|H|,
$$

for all $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$.
Proof. Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{h \in H} \chi(h) & =|H|\left(\frac{1}{|H|} \sum_{h \in H} \chi(h)\right) \\
& =|H|\left(\frac{1}{|H|} \sum_{h \in H} \chi(h) \overline{1_{H}(h)}\right)=|H|\left\langle\chi_{H}, 1_{H}\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

The result follows by Frobenius reciprocity.
Corollary 2.1.2 Let $G$ be a finite group. Then $G$ is abelian if and only if the trivial subgroup of $G$ is the unique model subgroup of $G$.

Proof. By Theorem 2.1.1 the trivial subgroup of a finite group $G$ is a model subgroup if and only if every irreducible character of $G$ is linear, which is the case if and only if $G$ is abelian. Since two model subgroups of a finite group $G$ have the same index in $G$, it follows that the trivial subgroup must be the unique model subgroup if it is a model subgroup.

### 2.2 Examples

So every finite abelian group has a model subgroup. However, it is not true that a finite group $G$, which has a model subgroup, is necessarily abelian. We shall illustrate this statement with the following examples.

Let $G$ be the alternating group of degree 4 . Then $G$ is generated by the permutations (12)(34) and (123). The order of $G$ is 12 and the elements

$$
(1),(12)(34),(123),(132)
$$

form a set of conjugacy class representatives of $G$. So $G$ has four irreducible characters. Since $G^{\prime}=<(12)(34),(13)(24)>$ and $G / G^{\prime} \cong C_{3}$, we obtain

| $g_{i}$ | $(1)$ | $(12)(34)$ | $(123)$ | $(132)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left\|C_{G}\left(g_{i}\right)\right\|$ | 12 | 4 | 3 | 3 |
| $\chi_{1}$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\chi_{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $\omega$ | $\omega^{2}$ |
| $\chi_{3}$ | 1 | 1 | $\omega^{2}$ | $\omega$ |
| $\chi_{4}$ |  |  |  |  |

where $\omega=e^{\frac{2 \pi 1}{3}}$. Since the sum of the squares of the irreducible characters equals the order of $G$, the degree of $\chi_{4}$ must be 3 . Finally, using the
orthogonality relations to completely determine $\chi_{4}$, we obtain

| $g_{i}$ | $(1)$ | $(12)(34)$ | $(123)$ | $(132)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left\|C_{G}\left(g_{i}\right)\right\|$ | 12 | 4 | 3 | 3 |
| $\chi_{1}$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\chi_{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $\omega$ | $\omega^{2}$ |
| $\chi_{3}$ | 1 | 1 | $\omega^{2}$ | $\omega$ |
| $\chi_{4}$ | 3 | -1 | 0 | 0 |

where $\omega=e^{\frac{2 \pi}{3}}$. Now $\chi((1))+\chi((12)(34))=2$ for all $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. So, by Theorem 2.1.1, the subgroup of order two generated by the permutation $(12)(34)$ is a model subgroup of $G$.

Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{2^{n}}$ and let $\epsilon$ be a primitive generator of $F$. Suppose that

$$
G=\left[F^{+}\right]<\epsilon>,
$$

the external semi-direct product of the elementary abelian group $F^{+}$and the cyclic group $<\epsilon>$ of order $2^{n}-1$ via $\sigma$, where $\sigma$ is the homomorphism from $<\epsilon>$ to $A u t\left(F^{+}\right)$defined by

$$
x^{\sigma\left(\epsilon^{\top}\right)}=x \epsilon^{i} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in F^{+}$and $0 \leq i \leq 2^{n}-1$. Then $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $\left\langle\epsilon>\right.$ and Frobenius kernel $F^{+}$by Lemma 1.7.1. So $G$ has $2^{n}-1$ linear characters $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{2^{n}-1}$ and a unique non-linear character $\chi$ of order $2^{n}-1$ by Theorem 1.6.4. Furthermore, if $\rho$ is the regular character of $F^{+}$, then

$$
\chi_{F^{+}}=\rho-1_{F^{+}}
$$

Now suppose that $M$ is a maximal subgroup of $F^{+}$. Then

$$
\sum_{m \in M} \lambda_{i}(m)=|M|
$$

because $M \subseteq \operatorname{ker} \lambda_{i}$ for all $i$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m \in M} \chi(m) & =\sum_{m \in M} \rho(m)-1_{F+}(m) \\
& =\left(\left|F^{+}\right|-1\right)+\sum_{1 \neq m \in M}-1 \\
& =\left(2^{n}-1\right)-\left(2^{n-1}-1\right)=2^{n-1}=|M|
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $M$ is a model subgroup of $G$ by Theorem 2.1.1. When $n=2$, the finite group $G$ has order 12 and is isomorphic to $A_{4}$.

### 2.3 Epimorphic images

Lemma 2.3.1 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $N$ be a normal subgroup of $G$. Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$ and let $\bar{\chi}$ be the corresponding irreducible character of $G / N$. Suppose that $H$ is a subgroup of $G$. Then

$$
\left\langle 1_{H N / N}, \hat{\chi}_{H N / N}\right\rangle=\left\langle 1_{H}, \chi_{H}\right\rangle .
$$

Proof.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle 1_{H N / N}, \dot{\chi}_{H N / N}\right\rangle & =\frac{1}{|H N / N|} \sum_{N h \in \frac{H N}{N}} \dot{\chi}(N h)=\frac{|H \cap N|}{|H|} \sum_{N h \in \frac{H N}{N}} \hat{\chi}(N h) \\
& =-\frac{1}{|H|} \sum_{h \in H} \hat{\chi}(N h) \\
& =\frac{1}{|H|} \sum_{h \in H} \chi(h)=\left\langle 1_{H}, \chi_{H}\right\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

The proof is complete.

Theorem 2.3.2 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $N$ be a normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H N / N$ is a model subgroup of $G / N$.

Proof. Suppose that $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$ and $\hat{\chi}$ is the corresponding irreducible character of $G / N$. Then

$$
\left\langle 1_{H N / N}, \dot{\chi}_{H N / N}\right\rangle=\left\langle 1_{H}, \chi_{H}\right\rangle,
$$

by Lemma 2.3.1, and

$$
\left\langle 1_{H}, \chi_{H}\right\rangle=1
$$

because $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. The result follows from Theorem 2.1.1.

Corollary 2.3.3 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $H$ be a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H$ is a subgroup of $G^{\prime}$.

Proof. By Theorem 2.3.2, we know that $H G^{\prime} / G^{\prime}$ is a model subgroup of $G / G^{\prime}$. But $G / G^{\prime}$ is abelian. So $H G^{\prime} / G^{\prime}$ is the trivial subgroup of $G / G^{\prime}$, by Corolla ry 2.1.2. Thus $H$ must be a subgroup of $G^{\prime}$.

### 2.4 Direct Products

Theorem 2.4.1 Suppose that $H_{1}$ and $H_{2}$ are model subyroups of $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$ respectively. Then

$$
H=H_{1} \times H_{2}
$$

is a model subgroup of $G=G_{1} \times G_{2}$.

Proof. Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Then $\chi=\theta \phi$ for some $\theta \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G_{1}\right)$ and $\phi \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G_{2}\right)$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{h \in H} \chi(h) & =\sum_{h_{1} \in H_{1}} \sum_{h_{2} \in H_{2}} \theta\left(h_{1}\right) \phi\left(h_{2}\right) \\
& =\left(\sum_{h_{1} \in H_{1}} \theta\left(h_{1}\right)\right)\left(\sum_{h_{2} \in H_{2}} \phi\left(h_{2}\right)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

But $H_{1}$ and $H_{2}$ are model subgroups of $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$ respectively. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{h_{1} \in H_{1}} \theta\left(h_{1}\right) & =\left|H_{1}\right| \text { and } \\
\sum_{h_{2} \in H_{2}} \phi\left(h_{2}\right) & =\left|H_{2}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

by Theorem 2.1.1. Hence

$$
\sum_{h \in H} \chi(h)=\left|H_{1}\right| \times\left|H_{2}\right|=|H|
$$

and $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ by Theorem 2.1.1.
Theorem 2.4.2 Suppose that $G=G_{1} \times \cdots \times G_{m}$. Then $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ if and only if the following statements hold.
(a) $H=\left(H \cap G_{1}\right) \times \cdots \times\left(H \cap G_{m}\right)$.
(b) $H \cap G_{i}$ is a model subgroup of $G_{i}$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$.

Proof. We may assume without loss of generality that $m=2$.
Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then

$$
\frac{H G_{1}}{G_{1}} \cong \frac{H}{H \cap G_{1}}
$$

is a model subgroup of $G / G_{1} \cong G_{2}$ by Theorem 2.3.2. So $G_{2}$ has a model subgroup of order

$$
\frac{|H|}{\left|H \cap G_{1}\right|} .
$$

We can show similarly that $G_{1}$ has a model subgroup of order

$$
\frac{|H|}{\left|H \cap G_{2}\right|}
$$

Thus by Theorem 2.4.1 $G$ has a model subgroup of order

$$
\frac{|H|}{\left|H \cap G_{1}\right|} \times \frac{|H|}{\left|H \cap G_{2}\right|}=\frac{|H|^{2}}{\left|H \cap G_{1}\right| \times\left|H \cap G_{2}\right|} .
$$

But the order of a model subgroup is determined by the sum of the character degrees of $G$ and is thus uniquely determined. So

$$
|H|=\frac{|H|^{2}}{\left|H \cap G_{1}\right| \times\left|H \cap G_{2}\right|},
$$

which implies that

$$
H=\left(H \cap G_{1}\right) \times\left(H \cap G_{2}\right)
$$

Let $\rho$ be the isomorphism from $G_{1}$ to $G / G_{2}$ satisfying $\rho\left(g_{1}\right)=g_{1} G_{2}$ for all $g_{1} \in G_{1}$. Then

$$
\rho_{1}\left(H \cap G_{1}\right)=H G_{2} / G_{2}
$$

and $H \cap G_{1}$ is a model subgroup of $G_{1}$, since $H G_{2} / G_{2}$ is a model subgroup of $G / G_{1}$. We can show similarly that $H \cap G_{2}$ is a model subgroup of $G_{2}$.

Now suppose that $H=\left(H \cap G_{1}\right) \times\left(H \cap G_{2}\right)$ and $H \cap G_{i}$ is a model subgroup of $G_{i}$ for $i \in\{1,2\}$. Then $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ by Theorem 2.4.1. The proof is complete.

### 2.5 Central Products

Lemma 2.5.1 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $N$ be a normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $G^{\prime} \cap N=1$. Then every irreducible character of $G$ is of the form $\chi \lambda$, where $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$ and $\lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime}\right)$.

Proof. Since $G^{\prime} \cap N=1$, the normal subgroup $N \subseteq Z(G)$ and

$$
N G^{\prime}=N \times G^{\prime}
$$

Suppose that $\phi \in \operatorname{Irr}(N)$. Then $\varphi=\phi 1_{G^{\prime}}$, is a linear character of $N G^{\prime}$ such that $G^{\prime} \subseteq \operatorname{ker} \varphi$ and $\varphi_{N}=\phi$. Hence

$$
\varphi \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(N G^{\prime} / G^{\prime}\right)
$$

and there exists a $\lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime}\right)$ such that $\lambda_{N G^{\prime}}=\varphi$. Thus $\lambda_{N}=\phi$. So we can choose

$$
\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{|N|} \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime}\right)
$$

such that $\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{N} \neq\left(\lambda_{j}\right)_{N}$ for $i \neq j$. Now let $\chi, \theta \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$. Suppose that $\chi \lambda_{i}=\theta \lambda_{j}$. Then

$$
\chi(1)\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{N}=\left(\chi \lambda_{i}\right)_{N}=\left(\theta \lambda_{j}\right)_{N}=\theta(1)\left(\lambda_{j}\right)_{N}
$$

Thus $\lambda_{i}=\lambda_{j}$ and $\chi=\theta$. We have found $|\operatorname{Irr}(G / N)| \times|N|$ distinct irreducible characters of $G$ and the sum of the squares of the degrees of these characters is equal to $|G|$. So every irreducible character of $G$ has the form $\chi \lambda$, where $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$ and $\lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime}\right)$.

Theorem 2.5.2 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $N$ be a normal subgroup of G. Suppose that $G^{\prime} \cap N=1$. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $G / N$ has a model subgroup.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup, then $G / N$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.3.2.

Suppose that $G / N$ has a model subgroup $H / N$. Let $\mu \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Then by Lemma 2.5.1 $\mu=\chi \lambda$, for some $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / N)$ and $\lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime}\right)$. So

$$
\sum_{h \in H \cap G^{\prime}} \mu(h)=\sum_{h \in H \cap G^{\prime}} \chi \lambda(h)=\sum_{h \in H \cap G^{\prime}} \chi(h) \lambda(h)=\sum_{h \in H \cap G^{\prime}} \chi(h) .
$$

Then $N \subseteq H \subseteq G$ and $H \subseteq N G^{\prime}$ since $H / N \subseteq(G / N)^{\prime}$, by Corolla ry 2.3.3.
Thus $H=N G^{\prime} \cap H=N\left(G^{\prime} \cap H\right)$.

$$
\sum_{h \in H \cap G^{\prime}} \chi(h)=\sum_{N h \in H / N} \hat{\chi}(N h)=|H / N|=\left|H \cap G^{\prime}\right|
$$

by Theorem 2.1.1 and $H \cap G^{\prime}$ is a model subgroup of $G$.
Theorem 2.5.3 Let $G$ be a central product of $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$. Suppose that $G_{i}^{\prime} \cap Z\left(G_{i}\right)=1$ for all $i$. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $G_{i}$ has a model subgroup for $1 \leq i \leq m$.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Let

$$
\dot{G}_{i}=G_{1} \ldots G_{i-1} G_{i+1} \ldots G_{m}
$$

Then the quotient group

$$
\frac{G_{i}}{G_{i} \cap G_{i}} \cong \frac{G}{\hat{G}_{i}}
$$

has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.3.2. But

$$
G_{i} \cap \dot{G}_{i} \subseteq Z\left(G_{i}\right)
$$

and thus intersects trivially with $G_{i}^{\prime}$. Hence $G_{i}$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.5.2.

Suppose that $G_{i}$ has a model subgroup for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Let

$$
D=G_{1} \times \cdots \times G_{m}
$$

Then the map $\epsilon$ from $D$ to $G$ defined by

$$
\epsilon:\left(g_{1}, \ldots, g_{m}\right) \rightarrow g_{1} \ldots g_{m}
$$

is an epimorphism. Furthermore, $D$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.4.2. Hence $G$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.3.2.

### 2.6 Nilpotent groups

We have already seen that non-abelian finite groups with model subgroups exist. However non-abelian finite nilpotent groups with model subgroups do not.

Lemma 2.6.1 Let $G$ be a finite group and let $H$ be a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H \cap Z(G)=1$.

Proof. Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Since $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$, we have $\left\langle\chi_{H}, 1_{H}\right\rangle=1$. So $\left\langle\chi_{H \cap Z(G)}, 1_{H \cap Z(G)}\right\rangle \neq 0$ and $\chi_{H \cap Z(G)}=\chi(1) 1_{H \cap Z(G)}$. Thus $H \cap Z(G)$ is a subgroup of the kernel of $\chi$ and

$$
H \cap Z(G) \subseteq \bigcap_{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \operatorname{ker} \chi=1
$$

The proof is complete.
Theorem 2.6.2 Let $G$ be a finite nilpotent group. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $G$ is abelian.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ is minimal such that $G$ is non-abelian and $G$ has a model subgroup, $H$ say. Then $H Z(G) / Z(G)$ is a model subgroup of $G / Z(G)$, by Theorem 2.3.2. So $G / Z(G)$ must be abelian, by the minimality of $G$. Thus $G^{\prime}$ is a subgroup of $\mathrm{Z}(\mathrm{G})$. Since $H$ is a subgroup of $G^{\prime}$ and $H \cap Z(G)=1$, by Corolla ry 2.3.3 and Lemma 2.6.1 we see that $H$ must be the trivial subgroup of $G$. But this contradicts Corolla ry 2.1.2 and the result follows.

## Chapter 3

## Frobenius groups

In the previous chapter we gave some examples of Frobenius groups possessing model subgroups. We shall now derive necessary and sufficient conditions for a Frobenius group to admit a model subgroup.

### 3.1 Complements and model subgroups

In this section we shall prove that if a Frobenius group admits a model subgroup, then its Frobenius complement is cyclic of odd order.

Theorem 3.1.1 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $C$ has odd order.

Proof. Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$ satisfying $N \nsubseteq$ ker $\chi$. Then by Theorem 1.6.4 $\chi=\theta^{G}$ for some $\theta \in \operatorname{Irr}(N)$ and

$$
\chi_{N}=\theta_{1}+\cdots+\theta_{|C|}
$$

where $\theta=\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{|C|}$ are the conjugates of $\theta$ in $G$. Let $c$ be the unique element of $C$ of order 2 satisfying

$$
n^{c}=n^{-1}
$$

for all $n \in N$, whose existence is guaranteed by Lemma 1.7.3. If $K$ is a subgroup of $N$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
<1_{K}, \theta_{K}> & =\frac{1}{|K|} \sum_{k \in K} \theta(k) \\
& =\frac{1}{|K|} \sum_{k \in K} \theta\left(k^{-1}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{|K|} \sum_{k \in K} \theta^{c}(k)=<1_{K}, \theta_{K}^{c}>.
\end{aligned}
$$

So $<1_{\kappa}, \chi_{\kappa}>=2 m$ for some $m \geq 0$. Now suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ and $K=H \cap N$. Then

$$
\sum_{k \in K} \chi(k)=\sum_{h \in H} \chi(h)=|H|,
$$

by Theorem 2.1.1 and because $\chi$ vanishes outside $N$. Furthermore, $H N / N$ is a model subgroup of $G / N$ by Theorem 2.3.2 and $H N / N \cap Z(G / N)=1$ by Lemma 2.6.1. However

$$
|H N / N|=\frac{|H|}{|H \cap N|}=\frac{|H|}{|K|}=\frac{1}{|K|} \sum_{k \in K} \chi(k)=<1_{K}, \chi_{\kappa}>=2 m
$$

and the subgroup $H N / N$ of $G / N \cong C$ must contain the unique element of $G / N$ of order 2 . This element is clearly contained in the centre of $G / N$ contradicting $H N / N \cap Z(G / N)=1$. The proof is complete.

Lemma 3.1.2 Let $G$ be a finite group. Suppose that every p-Sylow subgroup of $G$ is cyclic. Then $G$ is soluble.

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 2.8, page 420] Let $P$ be a $p$-Sylow subgroup of $G$, where $p$ is the smallest prime dividing the order of $G$. Then

$$
N_{G}(P) \supseteq C_{G}(P) \supseteq P
$$

because $P$ is cyclic, and $N_{G}(P) / C_{G}(P) \subseteq A u t(P)$. Now suppose that

$$
1 \neq n C_{G}(P) \in N_{G}(P) / C_{G}(P)
$$

induces the automorphism $\alpha$ on $P$ and the non-trivial automorphism $\bar{\alpha}$ on

$$
P / \Phi(P) \cong C_{p}
$$

Then $p$ does not divide the order of $\bar{\alpha}$. So $1 \neq o(\bar{\alpha}) \mid p-1$ and

$$
(o(\alpha), p-1) \neq 1
$$

But if $q$ is a prime dividing the order of $\alpha$ then $q>p$. Therefore $N_{G}(P)$ must equal $C_{G}(P)$ and consequently $P$ has a normal $p$-complement $R$ in $G$. The result follows by induction.

Lemma 3.1.3 Let $G$ be a finite group. Suppose that $G^{\prime} / G^{\prime \prime}$ and $G^{\prime \prime} / G^{\prime \prime \prime}$ are cyclic. Then $G^{\prime \prime}=G^{\prime \prime \prime}$.

Proof. Huppert [2, Satz 2.10, page 420] Assume that $G^{\prime \prime \prime}=1$. Then $G^{\prime \prime}$ is cyclic and the group $G / C_{G}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$, which is isomorphic to a subgroup of Aut $\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$, is abelian. So $G^{\prime} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$ and $G^{\prime \prime} \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. But $G^{\prime} / G^{\prime \prime}$ is cyclic and thus $G^{\prime}$ must be abclian. Hence $G^{\prime \prime}=1$ and the result follows.

Theorem 3.1.4 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $C$ is cyclic of odd order.

Proof. If $G$ has a model subgroup then so must $C$ by Theorem 2.3.2. Furthermore, we may assume that all the $p$-Sylow subgroups of $C$ are cyclic, by Theorem 3.1.1 and Theorem 1.7.8. So $C^{\prime} / C^{\prime \prime}$ and $C^{\prime \prime} / C^{\prime \prime \prime}$ are cyclic, and $C^{\prime \prime}=C^{\prime \prime \prime}$ by Lemma 3.1.3. Since $C$ is soluble by Lemma 3.1.2, we have established that $C^{\prime \prime}=1$. Hence $C^{\prime}$ is a normal cyclic subgroup of $C$ and since every subgroup of a cyclic group is characteristic, every subgroup of $C^{\prime}$ is a normal subgroup of $C$. If $H$ is a model subgroup of $C$, then $H$ must be contained in $C^{\prime}$ by Corolla ry 2.3.3. Thus $H$ is a normal subgroup of $C$ and

$$
1_{H} \uparrow^{C}=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{lr}(C / H)} \chi(1) \chi .
$$

So we must have $H=C^{\prime}=1$ and the result follows.

### 3.2 A necessary arithmetic condition

We shall now prove that a Frobenius group with an abelian Frobenius kernel of prime power order has a model subgroup only if it satisfies a specific arithmetic condition.

Theorem 3.2.1 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $N$ of order $r^{n}$, where $r$ is a prime. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $C$ is cyclic of odd order and

$$
|G: N|=|C|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1},
$$

where $d$ divides $n$.
Proof. Since $G$ is a Frobenius group, $|C|$ divides $|N|-1$ by Lemma 1.5.1. So there exists an $x$ such that $|C| x=r^{n}-1$. Suppose that $H$ is a model
subgroup of $G$. Then $C$ is cyclic by Theorem 3.1.4 and

$$
|G: H|=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi(1)=|C|+|N|-1=|C|(1+x),
$$

by Theorem 1.6.4 and our assumption that $N$ is abelian. So $x=r^{d}-1$ for some $d \leq n$. Finally $d$ must divide $n$, since $x$ divides $r^{n}-1$.

Theorem 3.2.2 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $N$ has prime power order.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ is a minimal counter-example. By Theorem 1.7.6, $N$ is nilpotent and can be written as a direct product of its $p$-Sylow subgroups. So $N=P_{1} \times \cdots \times P_{j}$, for some $j>1$. Let

$$
M=\Phi\left(P_{1}\right) \times \Phi\left(P_{2}\right) \times P_{3} \cdots \times P_{j}
$$

Then $G / M$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.3.2 and $G / M$ is a Frobenius group, by Lemma 1.7 .4 , with Frobenius complement $C / M$ and Frobenius kernel

$$
N / M \cong \frac{P_{1}}{\Phi\left(P_{1}\right)} \times \frac{P_{2}}{\Phi\left(P_{2}\right)}
$$

contradicting the minimality of $G$. So we may assume that $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $N=L \times$ $K$, where $L$ and $K$ are elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$ and $p^{m}$ respectively, $r \neq$ $p$. Let $H$ be a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H \subseteq G^{\prime} \subseteq N$, by Theorem 3.2.1 and Corolla ry 2.3.3. So $H \cap L$ and $H \cap K$ are the $r$ and $p$ Sylow subgroups of $H$. Thus

$$
H=(H \cap L) \times(H \cap K) .
$$

Now $K$ is a characteristic subgroup of $N$ and thus a normal subgroup of $G$. So $G / K$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C / K \cong C$ and Frobenius kernel $N / K \cong L$. So $H K / K$ is a model subgroup of $G / K$ by Theorem 2.3.2 and

$$
|G: N|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

where $d$ is some divisor of $n$, by Theorem 3.2.1. Furthermore,

$$
|H \cap L|=|H: H \cap K|=|H K: K|=r^{n-d}
$$

by Theorem 3.2.1. We can show similarly that $H L / L$ is a model subgroup of $G / L$,

$$
|G: N|=\frac{p^{m}-1}{p^{e}-1}
$$

where $e$ is some divisor of $m$ and

$$
|H \cap K|=|H: H \cap L|=|H L: L|=p^{m-e} .
$$

We shall derive a contradiction by evaluating the index of $H$ in $G$ in two different ways. From above we have

$$
|G: H|=|G: N|\left(r^{d} p^{e}\right)
$$

But Theorem 3.2.1 states that

$$
\begin{aligned}
|G: H| & =|G: N|+\left(r^{n} p^{m}-1\right) \\
& =|G: N|\left(\left(r^{d}-1\right) p^{m}+p^{e}\right) \\
& =|G: N| p^{e}\left(\left(r^{d}-1\right) p^{m-e}+1\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Comparing the two values for the index of $H$ in $G$, we see that must equal $e$, which implies that $C=1$ contradicting our assumption that $G$ was a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$.

### 3.3 Kernels and model subgroups

In this section we shall prove that if a Frobenius group $G$ admits a model subgroup, then its Frobenius kernel is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$.

Lemma 3.3.1 Let $G$ be a finite group, let $n$ be an integer greater than zero and $\theta_{n}$ be the class function on $G$ defined by

$$
\theta_{n}(g)=\left|\left\{h \in G \mid h^{n}=g\right\}\right| .
$$

Suppose that $\nu_{n}(\chi)$ is the uniquely determined complex number

$$
\theta_{n}=\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \nu_{n}(\chi) \chi
$$

Then

$$
\nu_{n}(\chi)=\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \chi\left(g^{n}\right)
$$

for all $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$.
Proof. Isaacs [1, (4.4) Lemma, page 49-50] By the orthogonality relations we have

$$
\nu_{n}(\chi)=\left\langle\theta_{n}, \chi\right\rangle=\frac{1}{G} \sum_{g \in G} \theta_{n}(g) \overline{\chi(g)}
$$

Since $\theta_{n}(g) \overline{\chi(g)}=\sum_{h \in G ; h^{n}=g} \overline{\chi\left(h^{n}\right)}$, we have

$$
\nu_{n}(\chi)=\frac{1}{G} \sum_{h \in G} \overline{\chi\left(h^{n}\right)}
$$

Finally replace by $h$ by $h^{-1}$ to obtain the result.

Lemma 3.3.2 Let $N \triangleleft G$ and let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$ with $N \subseteq \operatorname{ker} \chi$. Let $\nu_{n}(\chi)$ be as above and let $\dot{\nu}_{n}(\chi)$ be the corresponding number in $G / N$. Then $\nu_{n}(\chi)$ equals $\hat{\nu}_{n}(\chi)$.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (4.7) Lemma, page 51-52] We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\nu}_{n}(\chi) & =\frac{1}{|G: N|} \sum_{N g \in G / N} \chi\left((N g)^{n}\right)=\frac{1}{|G: N|} \frac{1}{|N|} \sum_{g \in G} \chi\left(N g^{n}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \chi\left(g^{n}\right)=\nu_{n}(\chi) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The proof is complete.
Theorem 3.3.3 Let $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)$. Then $\nu_{2}(\chi)=1,0$ or -1 and $\nu_{2}(\chi) \neq 0$ if an only if $\chi$ is real- valued.

Proof. Isaacs [1, (4.5) Theorem, pages 50-51]
Corollary 3.3.4 Let $G$ have exactly $t$ involutions. Then

$$
1+t=\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{lrr}(G)} \nu_{2}(\chi) \chi(1)
$$

where $\nu_{2}(\chi)=0$ if $\chi \neq \bar{\chi}$ and $\nu_{2}= \pm 1$ if $\chi=\bar{\chi}$.
Proof. Isaacs [1, (4.6) Corollary, page 51] Since $\theta_{2}(1)=1+t$, the result follows immediately from Theorem 3.3.3.

Theorem 3.3.5 Let $G$ be a non-abelian special 2 -group of rank $2 n$. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of maximal subgroups of the centre of $G$ and let

$$
\mathcal{M}_{E}=\{M \in \mathcal{M} \mid G / M \text { is extraspecial }\} .
$$

Suppose that the order of the centre of $G$ is greater than $2^{n}$. Then

$$
\left|\mathcal{M}_{E}\right| \equiv 0 \bmod 2 .
$$

Proof. Suppose that $M$ is a maximal subgroup of the centre of G. Then $G / M$ is a non-abelian 2-group and $\Phi(G / M)$ has order 2 by Lemma 1.4.8. Hence $G / M=(Q / M) Z(G / M)$, where $Q / M$ is extra-special and $Q / M \cap Z(G / M)=$ $\Phi(G / M)$, by Lemma 1.4.8. If $Z(G / M)$ has order $2^{2 k_{m}+1}$, then $G / M$ has $2^{2 n}$ linear characters and $2^{2 k_{m}}$ irreducible characters of degree $2^{n-k_{m}}$. Furthermore, the restriction of every irreducible character of $G / M$ to $Q / M$ is irreducible. So every non-linear character of $G / M$ restricts to $\mu$, the unique non- linear character of $Q / M$ given by Theorem 1.4.5. Suppose that

$$
\nu_{2}(M)=\frac{1}{|G / M|} \sum_{g M \in G / M} \mu\left((g M)^{2}\right)
$$

Then for any non-linear irreducible character $\chi$ of $G / M$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nu_{2}(\chi) & =\frac{1}{|G / M|} \sum_{g M \in G / M} \chi\left((g M)^{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{|G / M|} \sum_{g M \in G / M} \mu\left((g M)^{2}\right)=\nu_{2}(M) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma 1.4.8 we have

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)-\operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G))=\bigcup_{M \in \mathcal{M}}\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / M) \mid \chi(1) \neq 1\}
$$

If $\lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}(G / Z(G))$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nu_{2}(\lambda) & =\frac{1}{|G / Z(G)|} \sum_{g Z(G) \in G / Z(G)} \lambda\left((g Z(G))^{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{|G / Z(G)|} \sum_{g Z(G) \in G / Z(G)} \lambda(1)=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus if $G$ has exactly $t$ involutions, then

$$
1+t=2^{2 n}+2^{n} \sum_{M \in \mathcal{M}} \nu_{2}(M) 2^{k_{m}}
$$

by Corolla ry 3.3.4 and Lemma 3.3.2. Now suppose that the order of the centre of G is greater than $2^{n}$. Then $2^{n+1} \mid 1+t$, because the set $\{g \in G$ : $\left.g^{2}=1\right\}$ is a union of cosets of the centre of $G$. Therefore

$$
\sum_{M \in \mathcal{M}_{E}} \nu_{2}(M) \equiv 0 \bmod 2
$$

where $\mathcal{M}_{E}=\{M \in \mathcal{M}:|Z(G / M)|=2\}$. Clearly $M \in \mathcal{M}_{E}$ if and only if $G / M$ is extraspecial. Since the non-linear irreducible character of an extraspecial 2-group is real valued, $\nu_{2}(M)= \pm 1$ for $M \in \mathcal{M}_{E}$ by Theorem 3.3.3. Thus

$$
\left|\mathcal{M}_{E}\right| \equiv 0 \bmod 2
$$

and the proof is complete.
Theorem 3.3.6 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $N$ of order $r^{n}$, where $r$ is a prime. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $N$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$. In particular, $N$ is elementary abelian.

Proof. By Theorem 3.2.1 $|G: N|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}$, where $d$ divides $n$. Now suppose that $1 \neq M \triangleleft G$ and $M \subset N$. Then $M$ has order $r^{m}$ for some $0<m<n$ and $G / M$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C / M$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $N / M$. So by Theorem $3.2 .1|G: N|=\frac{r^{n-m}-1}{r^{e}-1}$ where $e$ divides $n-m$ and

$$
\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}=\frac{r^{n-m}-1}{r^{e}-1}
$$

If this identity holds, then $e<d<n-m<n$. Rearranging the equation we obtain

$$
r^{d}\left(r^{n-m}-r^{n-m-d}-1\right)=r^{e}\left(r^{n}-r^{n-e}-1\right)
$$

and $d$ must equal $e$ contradicting the inequality above.

Theorem 3.3.7 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ of prime power order. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then $N$ is abelian.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ is a minimal counter-example to the claim and $S$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ contained in $N$. Then by Lemma 1.7.4 the factor group $G / S$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C / S$ and Frobenius kernel $N / S$. In addition, $G / S$ has a model subgroup by Theorem 2.3.2. Thus $N / S$ must be abelian, because $G$ is a minimal counterexample to the claim. So $N / S$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G / S$ by Theorem 3.3.6. Hence

$$
S=Z(N)=N^{\prime}=\Phi(N)
$$

and $N$ is a non-abelian special $r$-group. Suppose that $\mathcal{S}$ is the set of maximal subgroups of $S$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(N)-\operatorname{Irr}(N / S)=\bigcup_{T \in \mathcal{S}}\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(N / T) \mid \chi(1) \neq 1\}
$$

by Lemma 1.4.8. Furthermore, if $T \in \mathcal{S}$, then $N / T$ is a non-abelian $r$-group and $\Phi(N / T)$ has order $r$. Now let

$$
\left\{T_{1}, \ldots, T_{j}\right\}
$$

be a complete set of orbit representatives of $S$ viewed as a $C$-set and let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}, \ldots, \mathcal{S}_{j}
$$

be the $C$-orbit containing $T_{i}$. Then by Lemma 1.4 .7 there exists a $k_{i} \geq 0$ such that for all $U \in \mathcal{S}_{i}$, the factor group $N / U$ has $r^{n}$ linear characters and

$$
(r-1) r^{k_{i}} \text { irreducible characters of degree } r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)}
$$

where $r^{n}$ is the order of $N / S$. Let $C_{i}=\left\{c \in C \mid T_{i}^{c}=T_{i}\right\}$. Then $c \in C_{T_{i}}$ if and only if $c$ acts fixed- point freely on $S / T_{i}$ by Lemma 1.7.4. Thus

$$
\left|\mathcal{S}_{i}\right|=\frac{|C|}{\ell_{i}}
$$

for some $\ell_{i}$ dividng $r-1$ by Lemma 1.7.1 and Lemma 1.5.1. Let $\operatorname{Irr}\left(N / \mathcal{S}_{\mathbf{i}}\right)$ be the set of non- linear irreducible characters of $N$, which contain an element of $\mathcal{S}_{i}$ in their kernel. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(N)-\operatorname{Irr}(N / S)=\operatorname{Irr}\left(N / \mathcal{S}_{1}\right) \dot{\cup} \cdots \dot{\cup} \operatorname{Irr}\left(N / \mathcal{S}_{j}\right)
$$

by Lemma 1.4.8. Furthermore,

$$
\left|\operatorname{Irr}\left(N / \mathcal{S}_{i}\right)\right|=\left|\mathcal{S}_{i}\right|(r-1) r^{k_{i}}=|C| \frac{r-1}{\ell_{i}} r^{k_{i}}
$$

since the kernel of every non-linear character of $N$ contains one and only one element of $\mathcal{M}$. Because $G$ is a Frobenius group, it clearly permutes these characters in orbits of length $|C|$.

Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H S / S$ is a model subgroup of $G / S$, a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C / S$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $N / S$. Therefore Theorem 3.2.1 states that $C \cong C / S$ is cyclic of odd order and

$$
|G: N|=|C|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

for some $d$ dividing $n$. Hence the index of $H S / S$ in $N / S$ is $r^{d}$ by Theorem 1.6.4. Since $C$ is cyclic, $H$ is contained in $N$ by Corolla ry 2.3.3. Thus $1_{H} \uparrow N$ is multiplicity-free and contains exactly one irreducible character from each orbit of $\operatorname{Ir}(N)$ viewed as a $C$-set by Theorem 1.6.4.

Let $T \in \mathcal{S}_{i}$. Suppose that $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(N / T)$ and $\hat{\chi}$ is the corresponding character in $N / T$. Then

$$
\left\langle 1_{H} \uparrow N, \chi\right\rangle=\left\langle 1_{H T / T} \uparrow N / T, \bar{\chi}\right\rangle,
$$

by Lemma 2.3.1. In particular, $1_{H T / T} \uparrow N / T$ is multiplicity-free. If $H \cap S \nsubseteq$ $T$, then $S / T \subseteq H T / T$. So

$$
\operatorname{ker}\left(1_{H T / T} \uparrow N / T\right)=\bigcap_{n T \in N / T}(H T / T)^{n T} \supseteq S / T
$$

and no non-linear character of $\operatorname{Irr}(N / T)$ can be a constituent of $1_{H} \uparrow N$. If $H \cap S \subseteq T$, then $H T / T$ has index $r^{d+1}$ in $N / T$. So $1_{H T / T} \uparrow N / T$ has degree $r^{d+1}$. Since $H S / S$ has index $r^{d}$ in $N / S$, the sum of the degrees of the non-linear irreducible constituents of $1_{H T / T} \uparrow N / T$ must equal $r^{d}$. Therefore

$$
r^{d-\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)}
$$

non-linear characters of $\operatorname{Irr}(N / T)$ are constituents of $1_{H} \uparrow N$. Thus

$$
\left|\left\{T \in \mathcal{S}_{i}: H \cap S \subseteq T\right\}\right|=\frac{\left|\operatorname{Irr}\left(N / \mathcal{S}_{i}\right)\right|}{|C|} / r^{d-\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)}=\frac{r-1}{\ell} r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n+k_{i}\right)-d}
$$

Suppose that $H \cap S$ has index $r^{x}$ in $S$. Then $H \cap S$ is contained in

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}
$$

elements of $\mathcal{S}$ and we have

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\frac{r-1}{\ell_{1}} r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n+k_{1}\right)-d}+\cdots+\frac{r-1}{\ell_{j}} r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n+k_{j}\right)-d} .
$$

Since the left-hand side is co-prime to $r$ we must have

$$
\frac{1}{2}\left(n+k_{i}\right)-d=0
$$

for some $i$. Since $2 d \leq n$, this forces $n=2 d$ and $k_{i}=0$. So $|C|=r^{d}+1$ and $r=2$, because $C$ has odd order. Rewriting the equation above we obtain

$$
2^{x}-1=2^{\frac{1}{2} k_{1}}+\cdots+2^{\frac{1}{2} k_{j}}
$$

Hence there must be an odd number of orbits of the set of maximal subgroups of $S$ viewed as a $C$-set with $k_{i}=0$. Since every orbit has length $|C|=2^{d}+1$, this implies that $N$ has an odd number of maximal subgroups of $S$ with extraspecial quotients. But $C$ acts fixed-point freely on $S$ by Lemma 1.7.4, so $|S|>$ $2^{d}$, by Lemma 1.7.1 and Lemma 1.5.1. The result follows by Theorem 3.3.5.

### 3.4 Finite fields and model subgroups

Definition 3.4.1 For $\alpha \in F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, the absolute trace $\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha)$ is defined by

$$
\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha)=\alpha+\alpha^{\tau}+\cdots+\alpha^{r^{n-1}}
$$

Theorem 3.4.2 Let $R=\mathbb{F}_{r}$ and $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$. Then the trace function $T_{F}$ is a linear transformation from $F$ onto $R$, where both $F$ and $R$ are viewed as vector spaces over $R$.

Proof. Lidl and Niederreiter [3, 2.23 Theorem, page 55] For $\alpha, \beta \in F$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha+\beta) & =(\alpha+\beta)+(\alpha+\beta)^{r}+\cdots+(\alpha+\beta)^{r^{n-1}} \\
& =\alpha+\beta+\alpha^{r}+\beta^{r}+\cdots+\alpha^{r^{n-1}}+\beta^{r^{n-1}} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha)+\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\beta)
\end{aligned}
$$

For $c \in R$ and $\alpha \in F$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(c \alpha) & =(c \alpha)+c^{r} \alpha^{r}+\cdots+c^{r^{n-1}} \alpha^{r^{n-1}} \\
& =c \alpha+c \alpha^{r}+\cdots+c \alpha^{r^{n-1}} \\
& =c T r_{F}(\alpha)
\end{aligned}
$$

Furthermore, $\operatorname{Tr}_{F} \alpha$ is an element of $R$ for all $\alpha \in F$, because it is left fixed by every field automorphism of $F$. We have proved that $T r_{F}$ is a linear transformation from $F$ into $R$, where both $F$ and $R$ are viewed as vector spaces over $R$. To prove that this mapping is onto, it suffices to show that the existence of an $\alpha \in F$ with $\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha) \neq 0$. Now $\operatorname{Tr}_{F}(\alpha)=0$ if and only if $\alpha$ is a root of the polynomial $x^{r^{n-1}}+\cdots+x^{r}+x$ in $F$. But since this polynomial can have at most $r^{n-1}$ roots in $F$ and $F$ has $r^{n}$ elements, we are done.

Definition 3.4.3 Let $b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $\chi_{b}$ be the function defined by

$$
\chi_{b}(c)=e^{2 \pi i T r_{F}(b c) / r}
$$

for all $c \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$.
Theorem 3.4.4 $\operatorname{Irr}\left(F_{r^{n}}^{+}\right)=\left\{\chi_{b} \mid b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}\right\}$.
Proof. Lidl and Niederreiter [3, 5.7 Theorem, page 190] Let $b, c_{1}, c_{2} \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $\chi_{b}$ be the function defined in Definition 3.4.3. Then

$$
\chi_{b}\left(c_{1}+c_{2}\right)=\chi_{b}\left(c_{1}\right) \chi_{b}\left(c_{2}\right)
$$

because $\operatorname{Tr}_{F}\left(b\left(c_{1}+c_{2}\right)\right)=\operatorname{Tr}_{F}\left(b c_{1}\right)+\operatorname{Tr}_{F}\left(b c_{2}\right)$ by Theorem 3.4.2. Thus $\chi_{b}$ is a linear character of $\mathbb{P}_{r^{n}}^{+}$for all $b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$. Now $\operatorname{Tr}_{F}$ maps $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ onto $\mathbb{F}_{r}$ by

Theorem 3.4.2. So the character $\chi_{1}$ is non- trivial. Therefore, if $a, b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ with $a \neq b$, then

$$
\frac{\chi_{a}(c)}{\chi_{b}(c)}=\frac{\chi_{1}(a c)}{\chi_{1}(b c)}=\chi_{1}((a-b) c) \neq 1
$$

for suitable $c \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, and so $\chi_{a}$ and $\chi_{b}$ are distinct linear characters of $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}$. Since $\operatorname{Irr}\left(\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}\right)$has cardinality $r^{n}$, the proof is complete.

Theorem 3.4.5 The map $\chi_{b} \rightarrow b$ is a group isomorphism from $\operatorname{Irr}\left(\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}\right)$to $\mathbb{F}_{r n}^{+}$.

Proof. Theorem 3.4.4 ensures that the map $\chi_{b} \rightarrow b$ is a bijection from $\operatorname{Irr}\left(\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}\right)$onto $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}$. So we need only show that the map $\chi_{b} \rightarrow b$ is a group homomorphism. Let $a, b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$. Then

$$
\chi_{a} \chi_{b}(c)=\chi_{a}(c) \chi_{b}(c)=\chi_{1}(a c) \chi_{1}(b c)=\chi_{1}((a+b) c)=\chi_{a+b}(c),
$$

and the result follows.
Theorem 3.4.6 Let $r$ be a prime, $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $m$ be a divisor of $r^{n}-1$. Let $C=\langle\epsilon\rangle$, where $\epsilon$ is a primitive mth root of unity of $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, and $N=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}$. Suppose that

$$
G=[N] C,
$$

the external semi-direct product of $N$ and $C$ via $\sigma$, where $\sigma$ is the homomorphism from $C$ to $\operatorname{Aut}(N)$ defined by

$$
x^{\sigma\left(\epsilon^{\prime}\right)}=x \epsilon^{\mathbf{i}} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $0 \leq i \leq m-1$. Then $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. In addition, if $0 \neq a \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $\chi_{\text {。 }}$
is the corresponding element of $\operatorname{Irr}(N)$, then the distinct characters

$$
\chi_{a}=\chi_{\mathrm{as} 0}, \ldots, \chi_{\mathrm{a} e^{m-1}}
$$

are the conjugates of $\chi_{a}$ in $S$. Thus for $a, b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}, \chi_{a}$ and $\chi_{b}$ are conjugate in $S$ if and only if $a^{m}=b^{m}$.

Proof. Since $\sigma(C)$ is a fixed-point free subgroup of $\operatorname{Aut}(N), G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ by Lemma 1.7.1. Suppose that $a \neq 0$ and $\chi_{a} \in \operatorname{Irr}(N)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\chi_{a}^{\varepsilon^{\prime}}(x) & =\chi_{a}\left(x^{\varepsilon^{-i}}\right) \\
& =\chi_{a}\left(x \sigma\left(\epsilon^{-i}\right)\right) \\
& =\chi_{a}\left(x \epsilon^{-i}\right) \\
& =\chi_{a e^{-i}}(x)
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $i \in\{0, \ldots, m-1\}$. Since $a \neq 0$, we have $\chi_{a e^{-i}} \neq \chi_{a e^{-j}}$ if $i \neq j$. So the conjugates of $\chi_{a}$ in $S$ are the distinct characters

$$
\chi_{a}=\chi_{a \mathrm{e} 0}, \ldots, \chi_{a e^{m-1}}
$$

and

$$
\left(a \epsilon^{2}\right)^{m}=a^{m}\left(\epsilon^{2}\right)^{m}=a^{m}
$$

for all $i \in\{0, \ldots, m-1\}$. Since $b^{m}=a^{m}$ if and only if $b$ is a root of $x^{m}-a^{m}$, which has at most $m$ roots in $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, the result follows for $a \neq 0$. If $a=0$ then $\chi_{a}$ is the trivial character of $N$, which is invariant in $S$. Since $b^{m}=0$ if and only if $b=0$, the proof is complete.

Definition 3.4.7 Suppose that $\alpha \in F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$, where $d$ is some divisor of $n$. Then the norm $N_{F / K}(\alpha)$ of $\alpha$ over $K$ is defined by

$$
N_{F / K}(\alpha)=\alpha^{r^{d}} \alpha^{r^{2 d}} \cdots \alpha^{r^{(n / d) d}}=\alpha^{\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)}
$$

Theorem 3.4.8 Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$, where $d$ is some divisor of $n$. Then the norm function $N_{F / K}$ satisfies the following properties :
(a) $N_{F / K}(\alpha \beta)=N_{F / K}(\alpha) N_{F / K}(\beta)$ for all $\alpha, \beta \in F$;
(b) $N_{F / K}$ maps $F$ onto $K$ and $F^{*}$ onto $K^{*}$;
(c) $N_{F / K}(a)=a^{n / d}$ for all $a \in K$;
(d) $N_{F / K}\left(\alpha^{r^{d}}\right)=N_{F / K}(\alpha)$ for all $\alpha \in F$.

Proof. Lidl and Niederreiter [3, 2.28 Theorem, page 57] (a) Follows immediately from the definition of the norm.
(b) An element of $F$ is contained in $K$ if and only if it is left fixed by all field automorphisms of $F$ of the form

$$
\alpha \rightarrow \alpha^{r^{d i}} \quad i \in\{1, \ldots, n / d\}
$$

Hence $N_{F / K}(\alpha) \in K$ for all $\alpha \in F$ and $N_{F / K}$ maps $F$ into $K$. Furthermore, since $N_{F / K}(\alpha)=0$ if and only if $\alpha=0, N_{F / K}$ is a group homomorphism from $F^{*}$ to $K^{*}$. Since the elements of the kernel of $N_{F / K}$ are exactly the roots of the polynomial $x^{\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)}-1$ in $F$, the order of the kernel is less than or equal to $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$. So the image of $N_{F / K}$ has order greater than or equal to $r^{d}-1$. Therefore, $N_{F / K}$ maps $F^{*}$ onto $K^{*}$ and $F$ onto $K$.
(c) If $a \in K$, then $a^{r^{d \prime}}=a$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, n / d\}$ and $N_{F / K}(a)=a^{n / d}$ as claimed.
(d) $N_{F / K}\left(\alpha^{r^{d}}\right)=N_{F / K}(\alpha)^{r^{d}}$ by (a) and $N_{F / K}(\alpha)^{r^{d}}=N_{F / K}(\alpha)$, because $N_{F / K}(\alpha) \in K$.

Theorem 3.4.9 Let $r$ be a prime, $n \in \mathbb{N}, d$ be a divisor of $n$ and $m=$ $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$. Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$. Let $C=\langle\epsilon\rangle$, where $\epsilon$ is a primitive mth root of unity of $F$, and $N=F^{+}$. Let

$$
G=[N] C
$$

the external semi-direct product of $N$ and $C$ via $\sigma$, where $\sigma$ is the homomorphism from $C$ to $A u t(N)$ defined by

$$
x^{\sigma\left(e^{i}\right)}=x \epsilon^{\mathrm{i}} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in F_{r^{n}}^{+}$and $0 \leq i \leq m-1$. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $F$ has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d}$ satisfying $N_{F / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup $H$. Then $H \subseteq G^{\prime} \subseteq N$ by Corolla ry 2.3.3. Since $N$ is abelian,

$$
1_{H}^{N}=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(N / H)} \chi
$$

and $\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)$ is a subgroup of the group $\operatorname{Irr}(N)$. But $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ by Theorem 3.4.6 and $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. So no two elements of $\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)$ can be conjugate in $G$ and $\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)$ must have order $r^{d}$ by Theorem 1.6.4. Furthermore, Theorem 3.4.4 states that

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(N)=\left\{\chi_{b} \mid b \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}\right\}
$$

so there exist elements $a_{0}=0, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{r^{d}-1}$ of $F$ such that the subgroup

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)=\left\{\chi_{a_{0}}, \ldots, \chi_{a_{r d-1}}\right\} .
$$

Let $H_{F}$ denote $\left\{a_{0}=0, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{r^{d}-1}\right\}$. Then $H_{F}$ is a subgroup of $F^{+}$by Theorem 3.4.5 and $a_{1}^{m} \neq a_{j}^{m}$ for $i \neq j$ by Theorem 3.4.6. But $N_{K / F}(a)=a^{m}$ for all $a \in F^{r^{n}}$ and $N_{K / F}$ maps $F$ onto $K$ by Theorem 3.4.8. So $N_{K / F}\left(H_{F}\right)=$ $K$, because $K$ has order $r^{d}$.

Now suppose that $F$ has an additive abelian subgroup

$$
H_{F}=\left\{a_{0}=0, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{r^{d}-1}\right\}
$$

satisfying $N_{F / K}(H)=K$, then there exists a subgroup $H$ of $N$ such that

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)=\left\{\chi_{a_{0}}, \ldots, \chi_{a_{r d-1}}\right\}
$$

by Theorem 3.4.5. Since $K$ has order $r^{d}$ and $N_{K / F}(a)=a^{m}$ for all $a \in F^{r^{n}}$, no two elements of $\operatorname{Irr}(N / H)$ can be conjugate in $G$ by Theorem 3.4.6. But $G$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$ by Theorem 3.4.6. So $H$ is a model subgroup by Theorem 1.6.4.

Lemma 3.4.10 Suppose that a and $n$ are natural numbers and $d<n$ is a divisor of $n$. Then $\left(a^{n}-1\right) /\left(a^{d}-1\right)$ divides $a^{n}-1$, but does not divide $a^{i}-1$ whenever $0<i<n$.

Proof. By Theorem 1.2.5 except in the cases $n=2, a=2^{b}-1$ and $n=6$, $a=2$, there is a prime $q$ such that $q$ divides $a^{n}-1$ but $q$ does not divide $a^{i}-1$ whenever $0<i<n$. If such a $q$ exists, then

$$
q \left\lvert\, a^{n}-1=\left(a^{d}-1\right)\left(\frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{d}-1}\right)\right.,
$$

but $q$ does not divide $a^{d}-1$. Thus

$$
q \left\lvert\, \frac{a^{n}-1}{a^{d}-1}\right.
$$

and the result follows. If $n=2$ and $a=2^{b}-1$, we need only consider the case when $d=1$. Since

$$
\frac{a^{2}-1}{a-1}=a+1>a-1
$$

the result holds. Finally, if $n=6$ and $a=2$, we need to consider the cases $d=1,2,3$.

$$
\frac{2^{6}-1}{2^{d}-1}=63,21,9(\text { for }) d=1,2,3
$$

and it is routine to check that these numbers satisfy the hypothesis.

Theorem 3.4.11 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with an elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $r^{n}$ and a cyclic Frobenius complement of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some d dividing $n$. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if the finite field $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d}$ satisfying $N_{F / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$, where $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$.

Proof. Suppose that $C=\langle c\rangle$ is the cyclic Frobenius complement of $G$ of order $m=\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$ and $N$ is the elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of $G$ of order $r^{n}$. Then $N$ can be viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}[C]$-module via the $C$-action

$$
x c^{i}=x^{c^{\prime}}
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. Since each element of $C$ acts fixed-point freely on $N$ via conjugation by Lemma 1.7.1, the $C$-action is faithful and we can apply Theorem 1.1 .1 to an irreducible submodule $M$ of $N$. Thus there
exists a primitive $m$ th root of unity $\epsilon$ of $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, by Lemma 3.4.10, such that $M$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}[C]$-module via the $C$-action

$$
x c^{1}=x \epsilon^{i} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $0 \leq i \leq m-1$. Since $M$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}[C]$-module, $M$ must equal $N$ and thus $G$ is isomorphic to

$$
S=\left[\mathbb{F}_{\tau^{n}}^{+}\right]\langle\epsilon\rangle,
$$

the external semi-direct product of $\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}$and $\langle\epsilon\rangle$ via $\sigma$, where $\sigma$ is the homomorphism from $\langle\epsilon\rangle$ to $\operatorname{Aut}\left(\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}\right)$defined by

$$
x^{\sigma\left(\epsilon^{\prime}\right)}=x \epsilon^{2} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}^{+}$and $0 \leq i \leq m-1$. So $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $S$ has a model subgroup. The result follows by Theorem 3.4.9.

### 3.5 Conclusion

Theorem 3.5.1 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if the following conditions are satisfied.
(a) $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$.
(b) $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some $d$ dividing $n$.
(c) The finite field $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d}$ satisfying $N_{F / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$, where $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup. Then the Frobenius kernel $N$ of $G$, is elementary abelian of prime power order, by Theorem 3.2 .2 , Theorem 3.3.6 and Theorem 3.3.7. Furthermore, if $N$ has order $r^{n}$, then $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some $d$ dividing $n$, by Theorem 3.2.1. The result follows by Theorem 3.4.11.

Theorem 3.5.2 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$ and $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some d dividing $n$. Then the following statements hold.
(a) If $\left(n / d, r^{d}-1\right)=1$, then $G$ has a model subgroup.
(b) If $(n / d, r-1) \neq 1$, then $G$ does not have a model subgroup.

Proof. (a) Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$. Then the map $a \rightarrow N_{F / K}(a)$ is a homomorphism from the cyclic group $K^{\times}$of order $r^{d}-1$ into itself, by Theorem 3.4.8. Furthermore,

$$
a \rightarrow N_{F / K}(a)=a^{n / d}
$$

for all $a \in K^{\times}$. So if $\left(n / d, r^{d}-1\right)=1$, the $\operatorname{map} a \rightarrow N_{F / K}(a)$ is an automorphism of $K^{\times}$. Hence the additive abelian subgroup $K$ of order $r^{d}$ of $F$ has the property that

$$
N_{F / K}(K)=K
$$

since $N_{F / K}(0)=0$. The result follows by Theorem 3.4.11.
(b) Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and $K=\mathbb{F}_{r^{d}}$. Let $P$ be the prime subfield of $F$. Since the $\operatorname{map} a \rightarrow N_{F / K}(a)$ is a homomorphism from the cyclic group $F^{\times}$into itself
by Theorem 3.4.8 and $P^{\times}$is a characteristic subgroup of $F^{\times}$, the map

$$
p \rightarrow N_{F / K}(p)
$$

is a homomorphism from the cyclic group $P$ of order $r-1$ into itself. But $P^{\times}$is also a subgroup of $K^{\times}$. Hence

$$
N_{F / K}(p)=p^{n / d}
$$

for all $p \in P^{\times}$by Theorem 3.4.8. So if $(n / d, r-1) \neq 1$, there exists a non-identity element $q$ of $P^{\times \times}$satisfying $N_{F / K}(q)=1$. Suppose that $H_{F}$ is an additive abelian subgroup of $F$ of order $r^{d}$ and $0 \neq h \in H_{F}$. Then $h \neq q h \in H_{F}$ and

$$
N_{K / F}(q h)=N_{K / F}(q) N_{K / F}(h)=N_{K / F}(h)
$$

So $N_{K / F}\left(H_{F}\right)<K$. The result follows by Theorem 3.4.11.
Corollary 3.5.3 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$ and $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /(r-1)$, then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $(n, r-1)=1$.

Corollary 3.5.4 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{2^{2} d}$ for any $a, d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{2^{a} d}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, then $G$ has a model subgroup if and only if $r=2$.

Lemma 3.5.5 Let $r$ be a prime, let $n$ be a natural number and let $d$ be a divisor of $n$. Then $x \mid\left(n / d, r^{d}-1\right)$ if and only if $x \mid\left(\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right), r^{d}-1\right)$.

Proof. Suppose that $x \mid\left(n / d, r^{d}-1\right)$. Then $a x=r^{d}-1$ and $b x=n / d$ for some $a, b \in N$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
a x \frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1} & =\left(\left(r^{d}-1\right)+1\right)^{n / d}-1 \\
& =(a x+1)^{b x}-1 \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{b x}\binom{b x}{k}(a x)^{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\left.x \mid\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right), r^{d}-1\right)$, since $\binom{b x}{1}=b x$.
Now suppose that $x \mid\left(\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right), r^{d}-1\right)$. Then $a x=r^{d}-1$ and $c x=\left(r^{n}-1\right) /(r-1)$ for some $a, c \in N$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
a c x^{2} & =\left(\left(r^{d}-1\right)+1\right)^{n / d}-1 \\
& =(a x+1)^{n / d}-1 \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{n / d}\binom{n / d}{k}(a x)^{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $x \mid\left(n / d, r^{d}-1\right)$, since $\binom{n / d}{1}=n / d$. The proof is complete.
Corollary 3.5.6 Let $G$ be a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C$ and Frobenius kernel $N$. Suppose that $N$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n}$ and $C$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$, for some d dividing $n$. Then the following statements hold.
(a) If $\left(\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right), r^{d}-1\right)=1$, then $G$ has a model subgroup.
(b) If $\left(\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right), r-1\right) \neq 1$, then $G$ does not have a model subgroup.

## Chapter 4

## $\mathcal{X}$-groups

In this chapter we will begin by introducing a new class of finite soluble groups and determine when a group contained in the class admits a model subgroup. We shall then go on to classify those finite soluble groups not contained in the class but whose other epimorphic images are.

### 4.1 Definition

Let $G$ be a finite soluble group. Suppose that $G$ is abelian or $G$ has subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$ satisfying the following statements :
(X.1) $G=G_{1} \ldots G_{m} A ;$
(X.2) $\left[G_{i}, G_{j}\right]=1$ for $i \neq j$;
(X.3) $\left[G_{i}, A\right]=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(X.4) $G_{i}$ is not nilpotent for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(X.5) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(X.6) $A$ is abelian.

Then we call $G$ a $\mathcal{X}$-group.
We begin our analysis by establishing some elementary facts about $\mathcal{X}$-groups.
Lemma 4.1.1 Let $G$ be a finite soluble group. Suppose that $G$ has subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$ satisfying the statements (X.1) - (X.6) above. Then
(a) $G$ is a central product of the subgroups of $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$;
(b) $Z(G)=Z\left(G_{1}\right) \ldots Z\left(G_{m}\right) A$;
(c) $G_{i}^{\prime} \cap Z\left(G_{i}\right)=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(d) $G^{\prime}=G_{1}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{m}^{\prime}$ is abelian;
(e) $G^{\prime} \cap Z(G)=1$;
(f) $G^{\prime} \cap \Phi(G)=1$;

Proof. (a) and (b) follow immediately from (X.1) , (X.2) , (X.3) and (X.6)
(c) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$ for all $i$, by (X.5). So $G_{i}^{\prime} \cap Z\left(G_{i}\right)$ is either equal to $G_{i}^{\prime}$ or 1 . Suppose that $G_{i}^{\prime} \cap Z\left(G_{i}\right)=G_{i}^{\prime}$. Then $Z\left(G_{i}\right)$ contains $G_{i}^{\prime}$ contradicting (X.4), which states that $G_{i}$ is not nilpotent. Hence $G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $Z\left(G_{i}\right)$ intersect trivially.
(d) follows from (a), (X.6) and (c).
(e) For $1 \leq i \leq m$, let

$$
\dot{G}_{i}^{\prime}=G_{1}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{i-1}^{\prime} \times G_{i+1} \times \cdots \times G_{m}^{\prime}
$$

Then $G^{\prime} / \hat{G}_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G / \bar{G}_{i}^{\prime}$ for all $i$ and

$$
\bigcap_{i=1}^{m} \hat{G}_{i}^{\prime}=1 .
$$

Suppose that $Z(G) \cap G^{\prime} \neq 1$. Then there exists a $j$ such that $Z(G) \cap G^{\prime}$ is not contained in $\bar{G}_{j}^{\prime}$. So

$$
\left(\frac{G}{\hat{G}_{j}^{\prime \prime}}\right)^{\prime}=\frac{G^{\prime}}{\hat{G_{j}^{\prime}}} \subseteq \frac{Z(G) \hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}}{\hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}} \subseteq Z\left(G / \hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}\right)
$$

and $G / G_{j}^{\prime}$ is nilpotent. Furthermore,

$$
G_{j} \cong \frac{G_{j}}{G_{j} \cap \hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}} \cong \frac{G_{j} \hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}}{\hat{G}_{j}^{\prime}}
$$

is nilpotent contradicting (X.4). The proof is complete.
(f) Can be proved in the same fashion as (e), remembering that a finite group $G$ is nilpotent if and only if $G^{\prime} \subseteq \Phi(G)$.

Lemma 4.1.2 Let $G$ be a finite soluble group. Suppose that $G$ is not nilpotent and $G^{\prime}$ is minimal. Then $G^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G$. Furthermore, if $C$ is a complement of $G^{\prime}$ in $G$ then $Z(G)=C_{C}\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ and $G / Z(G)$ is a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C / Z(G)$ and elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} Z(G) / Z(G)$.

Proof. By the minimality of $G^{\prime}$, we have $\Phi(G) \cap G^{\prime}=1$ or $G^{\prime}$. If $\Phi(G) \cap G^{\prime}=$ $G^{\prime}$, then $G^{\prime} \subseteq \Phi(G)$ contradicting our assumption that $G$ is not nilpotent. So the elementary abelian normal subgroup $G^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G$, by $C$ say, and

$$
G=G^{\prime} C
$$

where $G^{\prime} \cap C=1$. Since $C$ is abelian, $M=C_{C}\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is a subgroup of $Z(G)$ and is consequently normal. If $C_{C}\left(G^{\prime}\right)=C$, then $G^{\prime} \subseteq Z(G)$ contradicting our assumption that $G$ is not nilpotent. So $M \neq C$. Clearly

$$
G / M=\left(G^{\prime} M / M\right)(C / M)
$$

and $G^{\prime} M / M \cap C / M=1$.
Now suppose $1 \neq g^{\prime} M \in C_{G^{\prime} M / M}(c M)$ for some $c M \in C / M$. Then

$$
\left[c, g^{\prime}\right] \in G^{\prime} \cap M=1
$$

and $g^{\prime} \in C_{G^{\prime}}(c) \triangleleft G$. By the minimality of $G^{\prime}$, we have $C_{G^{\prime}}(c)=G^{\prime}$ and $c \in C_{G}\left(G^{\prime}\right) \cap C=M$. Hence $C_{G^{\prime} M / M}(c M)=1$ for all $1 \neq c M \in C / M$. Suppose that

$$
c_{1} \in C / M \cap(C / M)^{g}
$$

for some $g \in G / M-C / M$. Then $g=c h$ with $c \in C / M$ and $1 \neq h \in G^{\prime} M / M$. So $(C / M)^{g}=(C / M)^{h}$ and

$$
c_{1}=c_{2}^{h} \in(C / M) \cap(C / M)^{h}
$$

with $c_{2} \in C / M$. Since $G^{\prime} M / M \triangleleft G / M$,

$$
c_{1} c_{2}^{-1}=\left[h, c_{2}^{-1}\right] \in C / M \cap G^{\prime} M / M=1
$$

and $c_{1}=c_{2}$. So

$$
h \in C_{G^{\prime} M / M}\left(c_{1}\right)
$$

and $c_{1}$ must be the identity. Thus $G / M$ is a Frobenius group at $C / M$ with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} M / M$. Hence $Z(G / M)=1$ and consequently $M=Z(G)$. The proof is complete.

Lemma 4.1.3 Let $G$ be a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group. Let $\mathcal{M}$ denote the set of all minimal normal subgroups of $G$ contained in $G^{\prime}$. Then

$$
G^{\prime}=\underset{M \in \mathcal{M}}{ }{ }^{M}
$$

and $G^{\prime \prime}$ is complemented in $G$. Let $D$ be a complement of $G^{\prime \prime}$ in $G$. For $M \in \mathcal{M}$, let

$$
D_{M}=D / C_{D}(M)
$$

and let $[M] D_{M}$ denote the external semi-direct product of $M$ and $D_{M}$ via $\sigma_{M}$, where $\sigma_{M}$ is the homomorphism from $D_{M}$ to $\operatorname{Aut}(M)$ defined by

$$
m^{\sigma_{M}\left(d C_{D}(M)\right)}=m^{d}
$$

for all $m \in M$ and $d \in D$. Then

$$
G / Z(G) \cong \underset{M \in \mathcal{M}}{ }[M] D_{M},
$$

and $G^{\prime} \cap Z(G)=1$.
Proof. Since $G$ is a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group, there exist subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$ satisfying the statements (X.1) - (X.6) above and

$$
G^{\prime}=G_{1}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{m}^{\prime},
$$

by Lemma 4.1.1(d). In addition, the characteristic subgroup $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G_{i}$, by $C_{i}$ say, and

$$
Z\left(G_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=C_{C_{\mathbf{i}}}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)<C_{i}
$$

for $1 \leq i \leq m$, by Lemma 4.1.2. So the abelian subgroup $G^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G$ by $B=C_{1} \ldots C_{m} A$ and

$$
C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=C_{1} \ldots C_{i-1} C_{C_{\mathbf{i}}}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right) C_{i+1} \ldots C_{m} A
$$

for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Furthermore,

$$
\bigcap_{i=1}^{m} C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=C_{C_{1}}\left(G_{1}^{\prime}\right) \ldots C_{C_{m}}\left(G_{m}^{\prime}\right) A=Z\left(G_{1}\right) \ldots Z\left(G_{M}\right) A=Z(G)
$$

by Lemma 4.1.1(b) and $G^{\prime} \cap Z(G)=1$ by Lemma 4.1.1(e).
Let $\pi=\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{t}\right\}$ be the set of primes dividing the order of $G^{\prime}$ and let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{p_{s}}=\left\{i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}:\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|=p_{s}^{a} \text { for some } a>0\right\}
$$

for $1 \leq s \leq t$. Then

$$
\{1, \ldots, m\}=\bigcup_{1 \leq s \leq t} \mathcal{S}_{p}
$$

and $G^{\prime}=G_{p_{1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{t}}^{\prime}$, where

$$
G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}=\underset{j \in \mathcal{S}_{p_{s}}}{ } G_{j}^{\prime}
$$

is the $p_{s}$-Sylow subgroup of $G^{\prime}$. So $G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian and can thus be viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}[G]$-module. Regarding $G_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}^{\prime}$ in this way, we see that

$$
G_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}^{\prime}=\bigoplus_{j \in \mathcal{S}_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}} G_{j}^{\prime}
$$

a direct sum of irreducible $\mathbb{F}_{p_{\mathrm{t}}}[G]$ - submodules. Hence $G_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}^{\prime}$ is completely reducible by Isaacs [1, Theorem 1.10, pages 5]. Furthermore, since $C_{G}\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right) \neq$ $C_{G}\left(G_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ for $1 \leq j<k \leq m$,

$$
G_{j}^{\prime}\left(G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}\right)=G_{j}^{\prime}
$$

for all $j \in \mathcal{S}_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}$, where $G_{j}^{\prime}\left(G_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}^{\prime}\right)$ denotes the $G_{j}^{\prime}$-homogeneous part of $G_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}^{\prime}$. It now follows from Isaacs [1, Lemma 1.13 page 6] that every minimal normal subgroup of $G$ contained in $G^{\prime}$ is of the form $G_{i}^{\prime}$ for some $1 \leq i \leq m$.

For $1 \leq i \leq m$, let $B_{i}=B / C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ and $L_{i}$ be the external semi-direct product of $G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $B_{i}$ via $\tau_{i}$, where $\tau_{i}$ is the homomorphism from $B_{i}$ to Aut $\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ defined by

$$
\bar{y}_{i}^{\tau_{i}\left(b C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right)}=\bar{y}_{i}^{b}
$$

for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $b \in B$.
Let $L=L_{1} \times \cdots \times L_{m}$ and let $\mu_{B}$ be the map defined from $B$ to

$$
B_{1} \times \cdots \times B_{m} \subseteq L
$$

by $\mu_{B}(b)=\left(b C_{B}\left(G_{1}^{\prime}\right), \ldots, b C_{B}\left(G_{m}^{\prime}\right)\right)$ for all $b \in B$. Clearly $\mu_{B}$ is a homomorphism and

$$
\operatorname{ker} \mu_{B}=\bigcap_{i=1}^{m} C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=Z(G)
$$

Furthermore, $\mu_{B}\left(C_{i}\right)=B_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and consequently

$$
\mu_{B}(B)=\mu_{B}\left(C_{1}\right) \ldots \mu_{B}\left(C_{m}\right) \mu_{B}(A)=B_{1} \times \cdots \times B_{m}
$$

Let $\mu$ be the map defined from $G$ to $L$ by

$$
\mu\left(g^{\prime} b\right)=g^{\prime} \mu_{B}(b)
$$

for all $g^{\prime} \in G^{\prime}$ and $b \in B$. Then $\mu$ is an epimorphism from $G$ to $L$ and $\operatorname{ker} \mu(G)=Z(G)$.

Now suppose that $D$ is a complement of $G^{\prime}$ in $G$. For $1 \leq i \leq m$, let $D_{i}=D / C_{D}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ and $\left[G_{i}^{\prime}\right] D_{i}$ denote the external semi-direct product of $G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $D_{i}$ via $\sigma_{i}$, where $\sigma_{i}$ is the homomorphism from $D_{i}$ to $\operatorname{Aut}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ defined by

$$
y_{i}^{\sigma_{i}\left(d C_{D}\left(G_{i}^{G}\right)\right)}=y_{i}^{d}
$$

for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $d \in D$.
Let $N$ be a normal subgroup of $G$ contained in $G^{\prime}$. Then

$$
G^{\prime} \subseteq C_{G}(N) \subseteq G^{\prime} D=G^{\prime} B
$$

and

$$
G^{\prime}\left(C_{G}(N) \cap D\right)=C_{G}(N) \cap G^{\prime} D=C_{G}(N) \cap G^{\prime} B=G^{\prime}\left(C_{G}(N) \cap B\right) .
$$

In particular, $\left|C_{G}(N) \cap D\right|=\left|C_{G}(N) \cap B\right|$. So $\left|D_{\mathrm{i}}\right|=\left|B_{\mathrm{i}}\right|$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and

$$
|G / Z(G)|=|L|=\left|\left[G_{1}^{\prime}\right] D_{1} \times \cdots \times\left[G_{m}^{\prime}\right] D_{m}\right| .
$$

Let $\lambda_{D}$ be the map defined from $D$ to

$$
D_{1} \times \cdots \times D_{m} \subseteq\left[G_{1}^{\prime}\right] D_{1} \times \cdots \times\left[G_{m}^{\prime}\right] D_{m}
$$

by $\lambda_{D}(d)=\left(d C_{D}\left(G_{1}^{\prime}\right), \ldots, d C_{D}\left(G_{m}^{\prime}\right)\right)$ for all $d \in D$ and let $\lambda$ be the map defined from $G$ to

$$
\left[G_{1}^{\prime}\right] D_{1} \times \cdots \times\left[G_{m}^{\prime}\right] D_{m}
$$

by $\lambda\left(g^{\prime} d\right)=g^{\prime} \lambda_{D}(d)$ for all $g^{\prime} \in G^{\prime}$ and $d \in D$. Then $\lambda$ is a homomorphism and

$$
\operatorname{ker\lambda } \lambda=\bigcap_{i=1}^{m} C_{D}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=C_{D}\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq Z(G)
$$

So $\operatorname{ker} \lambda=Z(G)$ and

$$
G / Z(G) \cong\left[G_{1}^{\prime}\right] D_{1} \times \cdots \times\left[G_{m}^{\prime}\right] D_{m}
$$

because $|G / \operatorname{ker} \lambda| \geq|G / Z(G)|=\left|\left[G_{1}^{\prime}\right] D_{1} \times \cdots \times\left[G_{m}^{\prime}\right] D_{m}\right| \geq|G / \operatorname{ker} \lambda|$. The proof is complete.

Theorem 4.1.4 Let $G$ be a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group. Then $G^{\prime} \cap Z(G)=1$ and $G$ admits a model subgroup if and only if $G / Z(G)$ is isomorphic to a direct product of subgroups

$$
G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}
$$

satisfying the following statements.
(a) $G_{i}$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i}$ with Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime}$.
(b) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian of order $r^{n_{2}}$.
(c) $C_{i}$ is cyclic of order $\left(r^{n_{1}}-1\right) /\left(r^{d_{i}}-1\right)$, for some $d_{i}$ dividing $n_{i}$.
(d) The finite field $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, has an additive abelian subgroup $H_{F}$ of order $r^{d_{i}}$ satisfying $N_{F / K}\left(H_{F}\right)=K$, where $K=\mathbb{F}_{\boldsymbol{r}^{d_{i}}}$.

Proof. The result follows by Lemma 4.1.3, Theorem 2.4.2, Theorem 2.5.2, and Theorem 3.5.1

### 4.2 Class closure properties

Lemma 4.2.1 Let $G$ be a $\mathcal{X}$-group and let $K$ be a normal subgroup of $G$. Then $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group.

Proof. If $G$ is abelian, then $G / K$ is abelian and the result follows immediately. So we may assume that $G$ has subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$ satisfying the following statements.

$$
\left[G_{i} K / K, G_{j} K / K\right]=\left[G_{1}, G_{2}\right] K / K=K / K
$$

for $i \neq j$,

$$
\left[G_{i} K / K, A K / K\right]=\left[G_{i}, A\right] K / K=K / K
$$

for all $i$ and

$$
G / K=\left(G_{1} K / K\right) \ldots\left(G_{m} K / K\right)(A K / K)
$$

So we need only show that the factor groups

$$
\frac{G_{i} K}{K} \cong \frac{G_{i}}{G_{i} \cap K}
$$

are either abelian or not nilpotent with a minimal derived group in order to complete the proof.

Since $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$, either $G_{i}^{\prime} \subseteq K$ or $G_{i}^{\prime} \cap K=1$. If $G_{i}^{\prime} \subseteq K$, then $G_{i} K / K$ is abelian. So we may assume that

$$
G_{i}^{\prime} \cap K=1
$$

Suppose that $z_{i} \in Z_{i}$, where

$$
\frac{Z_{i}}{G_{i} \cap K}=Z\left(G_{i} / G_{i} \cap K\right)
$$

then $\left[z_{i}, g_{i}\right] \in G_{i}^{\prime} \cap K=1$ for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}$. Thus

$$
Z\left(G_{i} / G_{i} \cap K\right)=\frac{Z\left(G_{i}\right)}{G_{i} \cap K}
$$

and $G_{i} / G_{i} \cap K$ cannot be nilpotent, because $G_{i}$ is not nilpotent. Finally,

$$
G_{i}^{\prime}\left(G_{i} \cap K\right)=G_{i}^{\prime} \times\left(G_{i} \cap K\right),
$$

and thus $\left(G_{i} / G_{i} \cap K\right)^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i} / G_{i} \cap K$, if and only if $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$. The result follows.

Lemma 4.2.2 Let $G$ be a finite soluble group and let $K$ be a normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $G^{\prime} \cap K=1$. Then $G$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group if and only if $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group.

Proof. If $G$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group then $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group by Lemma 4.2.1.
Suppose that $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group. If $G / K$ is abelian, then $G$ is abelian because $G^{\prime} \subseteq K \cap G^{\prime}=1$. So we may assume that $G / K$ has subgroups $G_{1} / K, \ldots, G_{m} / K$ and $A / K$ satisfying the statements (X.1) - (X.6) above. Thus

$$
\left[G_{i}, G_{j}\right] \subseteq G^{\prime} \cap K=1
$$

for $i \neq j$,

$$
\left[G_{i}, A\right] \subseteq G^{\prime} \cap K=1
$$

for all $i$, and

$$
G=G_{1} \ldots G_{m} A
$$

Furthermore, $A$ is abelian and the $G_{i}$ cannot be nilpotent, because the $G_{i} / K$ are not nilpotent. So we need only show that $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$ for all $i$ in order to complete the proof. But

$$
G_{i}^{\prime} K=G_{i}^{\prime} \times K
$$

So $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i}$, if and only if $\left(G_{i} / K\right)^{\prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i} / K$. The result follows.

### 4.3 Minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups

Let $G$ be a finite soluble group. Suppose that $G$ satisfies the following statements :
(a) $G$ is not a $\mathcal{X}$-group;
(b) $G / N$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group for all $1 \neq N \triangleleft G$.

Then we call $G$ a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group.
Lemma 4.3.1 Let $G$ be a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group and let $K$ be a minimal normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $G / K$ is abelian. Then
(A) $G$ is a $p$-group, $G^{\prime}$ is cyclic of order $p$ and is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$.

Proof. Since $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group, $G$ is non-abelian, $G^{\prime}=K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ by Lemma 4.2 .2 and $G$ is nilpotent. The result follows.

Lemma 4.3.2 Let $G$ be a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group and let $K$ be a minimal normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $K \subseteq Z(G)$ and $G / K$ is non-abelian. Then
(B) $G=U A$, where $U$ and $A$ are subgroups satisfying the following
(a) $U$ is a central product of subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ with amalgamated centres;
(b) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$, where $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{i}\right|\right)=1$, for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(c) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is an extraspecial p-group for all $i$;
(d) $Z(U)=Z\left(G_{i}\right)=Z\left(G_{\mathrm{i}}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i$;
(e) $G_{i} / Z(U)$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} Z(U) / Z(U) \cong C_{i}$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / Z(U)$ for all $i$;
(f) $A$ is a p-group and $Z(U) \subseteq A \subseteq C_{G}(U)$;
(g) Either $A$ is cyclic or $A^{\prime}=Z(U)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $A$.

Proof. Since $K$ is a central minimal normal subgroup of $G$, it must be cyclic of order $p$. Furthermore, $K$ must be the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ by Lemma 4.1.1(e), because the minimal normal subgroup $K$ is contained in $G^{\prime} \cap Z(G)$ by Lemma 4.2.2.

Since $G / K$ is non-abelian, $G$ has subgroups $H_{1}, \ldots, H_{m}$ and $B$ containing $K$ satisfying

$$
G=H_{1} \ldots H_{m} B
$$

where $B / K$ is abelian, $\left[H_{i}, H_{j}\right] \subseteq K$ for $i \neq j$ and $\left[H_{i}, B\right] \subseteq K$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Furthermore, $H_{i} / K$ is not nilpotent, $K \subseteq H_{i}^{\prime}$, because $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$, and $H_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $H_{i} / K$ for all $i$.

Let $Z / K=Z(G / K)$. Then the normal subgroup $K \subseteq G^{\prime} Z \subseteq G$ is nilpotent, because $K \subseteq Z(G)$ and $G^{\prime} Z / K$ is abelian by Lemma 4.1.1(d). But
$O_{p \prime}\left(G^{\prime} Z\right)=1$, since $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$, and the nilpotence of $G^{\prime} Z$ ensures that $G^{\prime} Z$ is a $p$-group.

Let $Z_{i} / K=Z\left(H_{i} / K\right)$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Then $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}$ is a $p$-group and

$$
\left(\left|H_{i}: H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}\right|,\left|H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}\right|\right)=1
$$

by Lemma 1.5 .1 and Theorem 1.5.4, because $H_{i} / Z_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i} / Z_{i}$ by Lemma 4.1.2. So $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}$ is complemented in $H_{i}$, by $C_{i}$ say. Furthermore,

$$
H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / K=H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} \cap Z_{i} \cong H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} Z_{i} / Z_{i}=H_{i} / Z_{i}
$$

by Lemma 4.1.1(c) and $H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / K$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} K / K$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $H_{i}^{\prime} / K$ by Lemma 4.1.2.

Let $G_{i}=H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and let $A=Z_{1} \ldots Z_{m} B$. Then

$$
G=G_{1} \ldots G_{m} A
$$

and $A / K=Z(G / K)$ is a $p$-group. Furthermore, the commutators

$$
\left[G_{i}, G_{j}\right] \subseteq K
$$

for $i \neq j$ and $\left[G_{i}, A\right] \subseteq K$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$.
Let $c_{j} \in C_{j}$. Then $k^{c_{j}}=k$ for all $k \in K$ and $g_{i}^{c_{j}} K=g_{i} K$ for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}$ and $i \neq j$. Thus $g_{i}^{c_{j}}=g_{i}$ for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}$ and $i \neq j$, because $\left(\left|C_{j}\right|,|K|\right)=1$. So $C_{j} K \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{i}\right)$ for $i \neq j$ and since $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i} / K$ this ensures that $G_{j} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{i}\right)$ for $i \neq j$. We can show similarly that $G_{j} \subseteq C_{G}(A)$ for all $j$. Thus $G$ is a central product of the
subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$. Furthermore, $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $A$ and consequently $A^{\prime}=K$ or $A$ is cyclic of prime power order.

Suppose that $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is abelian. If $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian, then it can be regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module. But $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ is isomorphic to $C_{i}$, which has order co-prime to $p$, so we can apply Maschke's theorem. Thus

$$
G_{i}^{\prime}=K \times L,
$$

where $L \cong G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module, contradicting the fact that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$. If $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is not elementary abelian. Then $\Phi\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=K$. But $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right) \cong C_{i}$ is a $p^{\prime}$-group of automorphisms of $G_{i}^{\prime}$, which acts fixed-point freely and irreducibly on $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$. So $G^{\prime}$ is homocyclic and $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ and $K$ are $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$-isomorphic contradicting our assumption that $K$ is central. Thus $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is non-abelian, $G_{i}^{\prime \prime}=Z\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=\Phi\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)=K$ and $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is extra- special.

Setting $U=G_{1} \cdots G_{m}$ completes the proof.
Lemma 4.3.3 Let $G$ be a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group and let $K$ be a minimal normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $K \subseteq \Phi(G)$, but $K \nsubseteq Z(G)$. Then $G$ satisfies one of the following statements.
(C) $G=G^{\prime} C$ and the following conditions hold:
(i) $\left(\left|G^{\prime}\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(ii) $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $G / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is a Frobenius group at $C \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$;
(iv) $G^{\prime}$ is either homocyclic or special.
(D) $G=\left(G^{\prime} A\right) C$ and the following conditions hold :
(i) $\left(\left|G^{\prime} A\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(ii) $K=\left[G^{\prime}, A\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $A / K=Z(G / K)$;
(iv) $G / A$ is a Frobenius group at $C A / A$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} A / A ;$
(v) $G^{\prime} A$ is an $r$-group.
(vi) A is elementary abelian;
(vii) $G^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian, homocyclic or special;
(viii) $K=\Phi\left(G^{\prime} A\right)=\left(G^{\prime} A\right)^{\prime}$ and $K \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime} A\right)$.
(E) $G=G_{1} G_{2}$ and the following conditions hold:
(i) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$;
(ii) $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{\mathrm{i}}\right|\right)=1$;
(iii) $K=\left[G_{1}^{\prime}, G_{2}^{\prime}\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iv) $G / K \cong G_{1} / K \times G_{2} / K$;
(v) $G_{i} / K$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} K / K$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$;
(vi) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian;
(vii) $G_{1}^{\prime} G_{2}^{\prime}$ is special.

Proof. Since the minimal normal subgroup $K$ is contained in $G^{\prime} \cap \Phi(G)$ by Lemma $4.2 .2, K$ must be the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ by Lemma 4.1.1(f),

Suppose that $G / K$ is abelian. Then $K \subseteq Z(G)$ by Lemma 4.3.1. So we may assume without loss of generality that $G$ has subgroups $H_{1}, \ldots, H_{m}$ and $B$ containing $K$ satisfying

$$
G=H_{1} \ldots H_{m} B
$$

where $B / K$ is abelian, $\left[H_{i}, H_{j}\right] \subseteq K$ for $i \neq j$ and $\left[H_{i}, B\right] \subseteq K$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Furthermore, $H_{i} / K$ is not nilpotent, $K \subseteq H_{i}^{\prime}$, because $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$, and $H_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $H_{i} / K$ for all $i$.

Let $Z / K=Z(G / K)$. Then the normal subgroup $K \subseteq G^{\prime} Z \subseteq G$ is nilpotent, because $K \subseteq \Phi(G)$ and $G^{\prime} Z / K$ is abelian by Lemma 4.1.1(d). But $O_{p \prime}\left(G^{\prime} Z\right)=1$, since $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$, and the nilpotence of $G^{\prime} Z$ ensures that $G^{\prime} Z$ is a $p$-group.

Let $Z_{i} / K=Z\left(H_{i} / K\right)$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Then $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}$ is a $p$-group and

$$
\left(\left|H_{i}: H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}\right|,\left|H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}\right|\right)=1
$$

by Lemma 1.5.1 and Theorem 1.5.4, because $H_{i} / Z_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i} / Z_{i}$ by Lemma 4.1.2. So $H_{i}^{\prime} Z_{i}$ is complemented in $H_{i}$, by $C_{i}$ say. Furthermore,

$$
H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / K=H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} \cap Z_{i} \cong H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} Z_{i} / Z_{i}=H_{i} / Z_{i}
$$

by Lemma 4.1.1(c) and $H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i} / K$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} K / K$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $H_{i}^{\prime} / K$.

Let $G_{i}=H_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and let $A=Z_{1} \ldots Z_{m} B$. Then

$$
G=G_{1} \ldots G_{m} A
$$

and $A / K=Z(G / K)$ is a $p$-group. Furthermore, the commutators

$$
\left[G_{i}, G_{j}\right] \subseteq K
$$

for $i \neq j$ and $\left[G_{i}, A\right] \subseteq K$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$.
Suppose that $K \subseteq \Phi(A)$. Then $C_{i} \subseteq C_{G}(A)$ for all $i$, since $C_{i}$ centralises $A / K$ and $\left|C_{i}\right|$ is co-prime to $p$. So $C_{i} K \subseteq C_{G}(A)$, since $K$ is central in $G^{\prime} Z$. But $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i} / K$, so $G_{i} \subseteq C_{G}(A)$ for all $i$, contradicting our assumption that $K$ is not central. Thus we may assume without loss of generality that $A$ is elementary abelian.

Suppose that $K \subseteq \Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ for some $j$. Then $C_{i} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i \neq j$, since $C_{i}$ centralises $G_{j}^{\prime} / K$ and $C_{i}$ is co-prime to $p$. So $C_{i} K \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i \neq j$, since $K$ is central in $G^{\prime} Z$. But $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G_{i} / K$ for all $i$, so $G_{i} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i \neq j$ and

$$
\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{j}^{\prime}\right]=1
$$

for all $i \neq j$.
If $K \subseteq \Phi\left(G_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ for some $k \neq j$, then $C_{j} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{k}^{\prime}\right)$, since $C_{j}$ centralises $G_{k}^{\prime} / K$ and $\left|C_{j}\right|$ is co-prime to $p$. But $K \subseteq G_{j}^{\prime} \cap G_{k}^{\prime}$ and $K$ is central in $G^{\prime} Z$. So $K \subseteq Z(G)$, contradicting our assumption and we may assume that the $G_{i}^{\prime}$ are elementary abelian for all $i \neq j$.

If $\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{\ell}^{\prime}\right]=K$ for some $i, \ell \neq j$, then $C_{j} \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime} G_{\ell}^{\prime}\right)$ since $C_{j}$ centralises $G_{i}^{\prime} G_{l}^{\prime} / K$ and $\left|C_{j}\right|$ is co-prime to $p$. But $K \subseteq G_{i}^{\prime} G_{\ell}^{\prime} \cap G_{j}^{\prime}$ and is thus central,
contradicting our assumption. So we may assume that

$$
\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{e}^{\prime}\right]=1
$$

for all $i, \ell \neq j$. We can show in an identical fashion that

$$
\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, A\right]=1
$$

for all $i \neq j$.
So $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian and can be regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module. But $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ has order co-prime to $p$, because $G^{\prime} Z \subseteq C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$, enabling us to apply Maschke's theorem. Hence

$$
G_{i}^{\prime}=K \times L
$$

where $L \cong G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module, contradicting the fact that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$. So $G=\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right) C_{j}$.

If $G_{j}^{\prime}$ is abelian, then $G_{j}^{\prime}$ is homocyclic, because $C_{j}$ is a $p^{\prime}$ group of automorphisms of $G_{j}^{\prime}$ acting irreducibly on $G_{j}^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$. If $G_{j}^{\prime}$ is non-abelian, then $G_{j}^{\prime \prime}=\Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)=Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime}\right)$ and $G_{j}^{\prime}$ is special.

If $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, A\right]=1$ and $A>K$, then $G / C_{G}(A)$ has order co-prime to $p$. So we can apply Maschke's theorem to the elementary abelian group $A$ regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}(A)\right]$-module. Hence

$$
A=K \times L
$$

where $L \cong A / K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}(A)\right]$ - module, contradicting the fact that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$. So

$$
G=G_{j}^{\prime} C_{j},
$$

and satisfies the conditions outlined in case (a).
If $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, A\right]=K$, then $\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right)^{\prime}=\Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right)=K$. Furthermore, $K \subseteq Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right)$ and

$$
G=\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right) C_{j}
$$

satisfies the conditions outlined in case (b).
Now suppose that $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian for all $i$. If $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, G_{k}^{\prime}\right]=K$ for some $1 \leq j<k \leq m$, then

$$
\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right)^{\prime}=\Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right)=K
$$

and $Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right) \subseteq K$. If $Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right)>K$, then by Lemma 4.1.3 either $Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right)=$ $G_{j}^{\prime}$ or $G_{k}^{\prime}$, contradicting our assumption that $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, G_{k}^{\prime}\right]=K$. So $Z\left(G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ equals $K$ and $G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}$ is special.

Using similar arguments to those given above we may assume that for $i \neq j$ or $k$, the commutator $\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{j}^{\prime} G_{k}^{\prime}\right]=1$ and

$$
\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, A\right]=\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{\ell}^{\prime}\right]=1
$$

for all $\ell \neq j$ or $k$. Thus $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ has order co-prime to $p$ and we can derive a contradiction to the uniqueness of $K$ by applying Maschke's theorem to the elementary abelian group $G_{i}^{\prime}$ regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module. Again using arguments similar to those outlined above we can show that $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, A\right]=\left[G_{k}^{\prime}, A\right]=1$, if $A>K$. Thus $G / C_{G}(A)$ has order co-prime to $p$ and we can derive a contradiction to the uniqueness of $K$ by applying Maschke's theorem to the elementary abelian group $A$ regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}(A)\right]$ module. So

$$
G=G_{j} G_{k}
$$

and satisfies the conditions outlined in case (c).
If $\left[G_{j}^{\prime}, A\right]=K$ for some $1 \leq j \leq m$, then $\Phi\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right)=K$. So using similar arguments to those given above we may assume that for $i \neq j$, the commutator $\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{j}^{\prime} A\right]=1$ and $\left[G_{i}^{\prime}, G_{\ell}^{\prime}\right]=1$ for all $\ell \neq j$. Thus $G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ has order co-prime to $p$ and we can derive a contradiction to the uniqueness of $K$ by applying Maschke's theorem to the elementary abelian group $G_{i}^{\prime}$ regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right]$-module. So

$$
G=\left(G_{j}^{\prime} A\right) C_{j}
$$

satisfies the conditions outlined in case (b). The proof is complete.
Lemma 4.3.4 Let $G$ be a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group and let $K$ be a minimal normal subgroup of $G$. Suppose that $\Phi(G)=1$. Then $G$ satisfies one of the following statements.
(F) $G=G^{\prime \prime} X$ and the following conditions hold:
(i) $G^{\prime \prime} \cap X=1$;
(ii) $G^{\prime \prime}$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $X$ is a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group;
(iv) $X \subseteq A u t\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$.
(G) There exists a group $L$ and a monomorphism $\mu$ from $G$ into $L$ satisfying the following conditions:
(i) $L=L_{0} \times \cdots \times L_{m}$;
(ii) $L_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $L_{i}^{\prime}$;

> (iii) $\mu\left(G^{\prime}\right)=L_{0}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times L_{m}^{\prime}$
> (iv) $L=\mu(G) L_{i}$ for $0 \leq i \leq m$

Proof. By Lemma 4.3.1 and our assumption that $K$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ not contained in $\Phi(G)$ we may assume without loss of generality that $K$ is complemented in $G$ by a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group, $X$ say. So $X$ has subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ and $A$ satisfying the statements (X.1) - (X.6) above. Furthermore, Lemma 4.1 .2 states that the derived subgroup $G_{i}^{\prime}$ of $G_{i}$ is complemented in $G_{i}$ by $C_{i}$ say.

Since $X$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group, the minimal normal subgroup $K$ is contained in $G^{\prime}$ by Lemma 4.2 .2 and $(G / K)^{\prime} \cong X^{\prime}$ is abelian by Lemma 4.1.1(d). So we may assume without loss of generality that $G^{\prime \prime}$ is either equal to 1 or $K$.

Suppose that $G^{\prime \prime}=K$. Then $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$, because every epimorphic image of $G$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group and consequently has an abelian derived subgroup. So $C_{X}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)=1$ and $G$ satisfies the conditions outlined in case (a).

Suppose that $G^{\prime \prime}=1$. Then

$$
G^{\prime}=K \times G_{1}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{m}^{\prime}
$$

and there exists a subgroup

$$
B \cong C_{1} \ldots C_{m} A
$$

complementing $G^{\prime}$ in $G$, since $\Phi(G)=1$.

Let $B_{0}=B / C_{B}(K)$. Let $L_{0}$ be the external semi-direct product of $K$ and $B_{0}$ via $\sigma_{0}$, where $\sigma_{0}$ is the homomorphism from $B_{0}$ to $A u t(K)$ defined by

$$
k^{\sigma\left(b C_{B}(K)\right)}=k^{b}
$$

for all $k \in K$ and $b \in B$. Then $L_{0}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $L_{0}^{\prime}=K$, by Lemma 4.1.2.

For $1 \leq i \leq m$, let $B_{i}=B / C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ and $L_{i}$ be the external semi-direct product of $G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $B_{i}$ via $\sigma_{i}$, where $\sigma_{i}$ is the homomorphism from $B_{i}$ to $A u t\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ defined by

$$
g_{i}^{\sigma\left(b C_{B}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right)}=g_{i}^{b}
$$

for all $g_{i} \in G_{i}^{\prime}$ and $b \in B$. Then $L_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel $L_{i}^{\prime}$, by Lemma 4.1.2.

Let $L=L_{0} \times L_{1} \times \cdots \times L_{m}$ and let $\mu_{B}$ be the map defined from $B$ to $B_{0} \times B_{1} \times \cdots \times B_{m} \subseteq L$ by

$$
\mu(b)=\left(b C_{B}(K), b C_{B}\left(G_{1}^{\prime}\right), \ldots, b C_{B}\left(G_{m}^{\prime}\right)\right)
$$

for all $b \in B$. Clearly $\mu_{B}$ is a homomorphism and $\operatorname{ker} \mu_{B}$ is a normal subgroup of $G$.

If $\operatorname{ker} \mu_{B} \neq 1$, then $G / \operatorname{ker} \mu_{B}$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group and $\operatorname{ker} \mu_{B} \cap G^{\prime}=1$ contradicting our assumption that $G$ is not a $\mathcal{X}$-group by Lemma 4.2.2. So we may assume without loss of generality that $\mu_{B}$ is a monomorphism.

Let $\mu$ be the map defined from $G$ to $L$ by $\mu(g b)=g \mu_{B}(b)$ for all $g \in G^{\prime}$ and $b \in B$. Then $\mu$ is a monomorphism from $G$ to $L$ and

$$
\mu\left(G^{\prime}\right)=L_{0}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times L_{m}^{\prime}
$$

Let $\pi_{i}$ be the projective map from $L$ to

$$
L_{0} \times \cdots \times L_{i-1} \times L_{i+1} \times \cdots L_{m}
$$

for $0 \leq i \leq m$. Then $\pi_{i}(\mu(G))$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group, by the minimality of $G$, and

$$
\left(\pi_{i}(\mu(G))\right)^{\prime}=L_{0}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times L_{i-1}^{\prime} \times L_{i+1}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times L_{m}^{\prime}
$$

Furthermore, $\left(\pi_{i}(\mu(G))\right)^{\prime}$ is complemented in $\pi_{i}(\mu(G))$ by $\pi_{i}(\mu(B))$ and

$$
\frac{\left|\pi_{i}(\mu(B))\right|}{\left|C_{\pi_{i}(\mu(B))}\left(\pi_{i}\left(L_{j}^{\prime}\right)\right)\right|}=\left|B_{j}\right|
$$

for $j \neq i$. The result follows by Lemma 4.1.3.

## Chapter 5

## Case Studies

In this chapter we shall consider under what circumstances a minimal non-$\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 satisfying the co-prime condition

$$
\left(\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

can possess a model subgroup.

### 5.1 Case B

We begin by considering minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups satisfying the conditions outlined in Case B.

Lemma 5.1.1 Let $G=U A$, where $U$ and $A$ are subgroups satisfying the following conditions.
(a) $U$ is a central product of subgroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{m}$ with amalgamated centres;
(b) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$, where $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{i}\right|\right)=1$, for $1 \leq i \leq m$;
(c) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is an extraspecial $r$-group for all $i$;
(d) $Z(U)=Z\left(G_{i}\right)=Z\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ for all $i$;
(e) $G_{\mathrm{i}} / Z(U)$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{\mathbf{i}} Z(U) / Z(U) \cong C_{i}$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / Z(U)$ of order $r^{n_{i}}$ for all $i$;
(f) $A$ is a p-group and $Z(U) \subseteq A \subseteq C_{G}(U)$;
(g) Either $A$ is cyclic or $A^{\prime}=Z(U)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $A$.

Then $G$ does not admit a model subgroup.
Proof. Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H \cap Z(U)=1$ by Lemma 2.6.1 and $H Z(U) / Z(U)$ is a model subgroup of

$$
G / Z(U)=G_{1} / Z(U) \times \cdots \times G_{m} / Z(U) \times A / Z(U)
$$

by Theorem 2.3.2. So
$H Z(U) / Z(U)=H Z(U) / Z(U) \cap G_{1} / Z(U) \times \cdots \times H Z(U) / Z(U) \cap G_{m} / Z(U)$,
by Theorem 2.4.2 and Corolla ry 2.1.2. Furthermore,

$$
H Z(U) / Z(U) \cap G_{i} / Z(U)
$$

is a model subgroup of $G_{i} / Z(U)$. Therefore Theorem 3.2.1 states that

$$
C_{i} \cong C_{i} Z(U) / Z(U)
$$

is cyclic of odd order and

$$
\left|G_{i}: G_{i}^{\prime}\right|=\left|C_{i}\right|=\frac{r^{n_{1}}-1}{r^{d_{i}}-1},
$$

for some $d_{i}$ dividing $n_{i}$ and

$$
\left|H Z(U) / Z(U) \cap G_{i}^{\prime} / Z(U)\right|=r^{n_{i}-d_{i}}
$$

by Theorem 1.6.4 and Corolla ry 2.3.3. So

$$
\left|H Z(U) \cap G_{i}^{\prime}\right|=r^{n_{i}-d_{i}+1} .
$$

Furthermore, $H Z(U) \cap G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian, since $H Z(U) / Z(U)$ is elementary abelian and $H \cap Z(U)=1$. Thus $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$, by Theorem 1.4.1, and $r=2$, by Corolla ry 3.5.4. Hence $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is a central product of $d_{i}$ dihedral groups of order 8 with amalgamated centres, by Theorem 1.4.2, and

$$
\left|C_{i}\right|=2^{d_{i}}+1 .
$$

So, by Theorem 1.2.5 and noting that

$$
2^{n_{i}}-1=\left(2^{d_{i}}-1\right)\left(2^{d_{i}}+1\right),
$$

either $n=6$ or there exists a prime $q$ dividing $\left|C_{i}\right|$ satisfying the following conditions:
(a) $q$ divides $2^{n_{1}}-1$;
(b) $q$ does not divide $2^{j}-1$ whenever $0<j<n_{i}$.

If $n \neq 6$, then regarding $C_{i}$ as a subgroup of $\operatorname{Aut}\left(G_{\mathrm{i}}^{\prime}\right)$, we have

$$
\left|C_{i}\right|=\left|C_{i} \operatorname{Inn}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right) / \operatorname{Inn}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)\right|,
$$

which divides

$$
2^{\left(2 d_{i}\left(2 d_{i}-2\right) / 4\right)+1}\left(2^{d_{i}}-1\right) \Pi_{j=1}^{d_{i}-1}\left(2^{2 j}-1\right)
$$

by Theorem 1.4.4. But this contradicts our assumption that there exists a prime $q$ dividing the order of $C_{i}$ satisfying the statements above.

If $n=6$, then $C_{i}$ is cyclic of order 9 and $G^{\prime}$ is a central product of 3 dihedral groups of order 8 . So $C_{i}$ is isomorphic to a subgroup of

$$
S_{\mathrm{s}} \cong \operatorname{Aut}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right) / \operatorname{Inn}\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right),
$$

by Theorem 1.4.4. But this cannot not happen, because $S_{8}$ contains no element of order 9 . The proof is complete.

### 5.2 Case C

We now turn to minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups of derived length 3 satisfying the conditions outlined in Case C. We begin by proving three preliminary lemmas.

Lemma 5.2.1 Let $r$ be a prime, let $a>1$ be an integer prime to $r$ and let $b$ be the order of $r$ modulo $a$. Then

$$
r^{c} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{b}-1}{a}+1\right.
$$

if and only if

$$
r^{c} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{n b}-1}{a}+1\right.
$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
5. Case Studies

Proof. For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\frac{r^{n b}-1}{a}=\left(\frac{r^{n b}-1}{r^{b}-1}\right)\left(\frac{r^{b}-1}{a}\right)
$$

Furthermore,

$$
\left(\frac{r^{n b}-1}{r^{b}-1}\right) \equiv 1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

for all $0<c \leq b$ and consequently

$$
\frac{r^{n b}-1}{a} \equiv-1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

if and only if

$$
\frac{r^{b}-1}{a} \equiv-1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

for all $0<c \leq b$. In order to complete the proof we simply note that $r^{b}$ does not divide

$$
\frac{r^{b}-1}{a}+1
$$

because $a>1$.
Lemma 5.2.2 Let $r$ be a prime and let $b>0$ be an even integer. Suppose that $a \mid r^{b}-1$ and

$$
r^{\frac{1}{2} b} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{b}-1}{a}+1\right.
$$

Then either $a=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1$ or $a=1$.
Proof. There exists a $y$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{\frac{1}{2} b} y-1 & =\frac{r^{b}-1}{a} \\
& =\frac{\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right)\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1\right)}{a} \\
& =c d,
\end{aligned}
$$

## 5. Case Studies

Proof. For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\frac{r^{n b}-1}{a}=\left(\frac{r^{n b}-1}{r^{b}-1}\right)\left(\frac{r^{b}-1}{a}\right)
$$

Furthermore,

$$
\left(\frac{r^{n b}-1}{r^{b}-1}\right) \equiv 1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

for all $0<c \leq b$ and consequently

$$
\frac{r^{n b}-1}{a} \equiv-1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

if and only if

$$
\frac{r^{b}-1}{a} \equiv-1 \bmod r^{c}
$$

for all $0<c \leq b$. In order to complete the proof we simply note that $r^{b}$ does not divide

$$
\frac{r^{b}-1}{a}+1
$$

because $a>1$.
Lemma 5.2.2 Let $r$ be a prime and let $b>0$ be an even integer. Suppose that $a \mid r^{b}-1$ and

$$
r^{\frac{1}{2} b} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{b}-1}{a}+1\right.
$$

Then either $a=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1$ or $a=1$.
Proof. There exists a $y$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{\frac{1}{2} b} y-1 & =\frac{r^{b}-1}{a} \\
& =\frac{\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right)\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1\right)}{a} \\
& =c d,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $c \left\lvert\, r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right.$ and $d \left\lvert\, r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1\right.$.
If $y=1$, then $a=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1$. So we may assume without loss of generality that $y \neq 1$. Re-arranging the equation above we obtain

$$
r^{\frac{1}{2} b}(y-1)+\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right)=c d
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{\frac{1}{2} b}(y-1) & =c d-\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right) \\
& =c d-c e \\
& =c(d-e),
\end{aligned}
$$

where $c e=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1$. So $c \mid y-1$, since $y \neq 1$ and $(c, r)=1$. Furthermore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{\frac{1}{2} b}(y-1) & =c d-\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right) \\
& \leq c\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}+1\right)-\left(r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1\right) \\
& =r^{\frac{1}{2} b}(c-1)+(c+1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

And consequently, the following inequality holds.

$$
(y-c) r^{\frac{1}{2} b} \leq(c+1) \leq r^{\frac{1}{2} b} .
$$

So $y-c$ must equal 1 , since $c \mid y-1$, and $c=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}-1$. Thus $y=r^{\frac{1}{2} b}$ and the order of $a=1$.

Lemma 5.2.3 Let $G$ be a non-abelian $r$-group. Suppose that $\Phi(G)$ has order $r, Z(G)$ has order $r^{k+1}$ and $C \neq 1$ is a $r^{\prime}$-group of automorphisms of $G$,
which centralizes $\Phi(G)$ and acts fixed-point-freely on $G / \Phi(G)$. Then the set of non-linear irreducible characters of $G$ regarded as a $C$-set has

$$
(r-1)\left(\frac{\left(r^{k}-1\right)}{|C|}+1\right)
$$

orbits.
Proof. Clearly, $Z(G)$ is a $C$-invariant abelian subgroup of $G$ and as such can be regarded as a direct product of $C$-invariant homocyclic subgroups. Suppose that $Z(G)$ is not elementary abelian. Then $k>0$ and

$$
Z(G)=H \times E,
$$

where H is a $C$-invariant cyclic group of order $r^{2}$ and $E$ is a $C$-invariant elementary abelian subgroup of order $r^{k-1}$, since $\Phi(Z(G)) \subseteq \Phi(G)$. Thus $H / \Phi(H)=H / \Phi(G)$ and $\Phi(H)=\Phi(G)$ are $C$-isomorphic, contradicting our assumption that $C$ centralizes $\Phi(G)$ and acts fixed-point- freely on $G / \Phi(G)$. So $Z(G)$ must be elementary abelian and consequently can be regarded as a $G F(r)[\mathrm{C}]$-module. Hence,

$$
Z(G)=\Phi(G) \times Z
$$

where $Z$ is $C$-invariant, by Maschke's Theorem. Now $G / \Phi(G)$ can also be regarded as a $G F(r)[\mathrm{C}]$-module and re-applying Maschke's Theorem we obtain

$$
G / \Phi(G)=Q / \Phi(G) \times Z(G) / \Phi(G)
$$

where $Q / \Phi(G)$ is $C$-invariant and $Q$ is extra-special. So

$$
G=Q \times Z,
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)=\{\theta \lambda \mid \theta \in \operatorname{Irr}(Q), \lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}(Z)\} .
$$

Furthermore,

$$
\chi^{c}=\theta^{c} \lambda^{c}
$$

for all $c \in C$. Now since $Z$ is abelian and $Z(G) / \Phi(G)$ and $Z$ are $C$ - isomorphic, the fact that $C$ acts fixed-point-freely on $G / \Phi(G)$ implies that $\operatorname{Irr}(Z)$ regarded as a $C$-set has

$$
\frac{r^{k}-1}{|C|}+1
$$

orbits. Suppose that $\chi=\theta \lambda$ is a non-linear irreducible character of $G$. Then $\theta$ must be one of the $(r-1)$ non-linear characters of $Q$, since $Z$ is abelian. So $\theta$ vanishes outside $\Phi(Q)=\Phi(G)$ by Theorem 1.4.5 and consequently $C$ centralizes $\theta$. The result follows.

Theorem 5.2.4 Let $G$ be a finite group satisfying the following statements.
(i) $G=G^{\prime} C$;
(ii) $G^{\prime}$ is a special $r$-group;
(iii) $\left(\left|G^{\prime}\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(iv) $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ of order $r^{m}$;
(v) $M=C_{G}\left(\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)\right) \cap C \neq 1$;
(vi) $G / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is a Frobenius group at $C \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ of order $r^{n}$;

Then either $G$ does not admit a model subgroup or $n=6, r=2, m<n$ and $M$ acts reducibly on $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$.

Proof. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be the set of maximal subgroups of $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime}\right)-\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)\right)=\bigcup_{T \in \mathcal{S}}\left\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right) \mid \chi(1) \neq 1\right\}
$$

by Lemma 1.4.8. Furthermore, if $T \in \mathcal{S}$, then $G^{\prime} / T$ is a non-abelian $r$-group and $\Phi\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$ has order $r$. Now let

$$
\left\{T_{1}, \ldots, T_{j}\right\}
$$

be a complete set of orbit representatives of $\mathcal{S}$ viewed as a $C$-set and let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}, \ldots, \mathcal{S}_{j}
$$

be the $C$-orbit containing $T_{i}$. Then by Lemma 1.4.7 there exists a $k_{i} \geq 0$ such that for all $U \in \mathcal{S}_{i}$, the factor group $G^{\prime} / U$ has $r^{n}$ linear characters and

$$
(r-1) r^{k_{i}}
$$

irreducible characters of degree

$$
r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)} .
$$

Let $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \mathcal{S}_{\mathbf{i}}\right)$ be the set of non-linear irreducible characters of $G^{\prime}$, which contain an element of $\mathcal{S}_{i}$ in their kernel. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime}\right)-\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)\right)=\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \mathcal{S}_{I}\right) \dot{\cup} \cdots \dot{\cup} \operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \mathcal{S}_{j}\right)
$$

by Lemma 1.4.8. Furthermore,

$$
\left|\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \mathcal{S}_{i}\right)\right|=\left|\mathcal{S}_{i}\right|(r-1) r^{k_{i}}
$$

since the kernel of every non-linear character of $G^{\prime}$ contains one and only one element of $\mathcal{S}$.

Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is a model subgroup of $G / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$, a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ and abelian Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. Therefore Theorem 3.2.1 states that $C \cong C \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is cyclic of odd order and

$$
\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|=|C|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

for some $d$ dividing $n$ and the index of $H \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ in $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is $r^{d}$ by Theorem 1.6.4.

By Theorem 1.1.1, $C / M$ acts fixed-point freely on $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. So if

$$
C_{i}=\left\{c \in C \mid T_{i}^{c}=T_{i}\right\}
$$

then $C_{i} / M$ acts fixed-point freely on $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ and consequently acts fixed-pointfreely on $\Phi(G) / T_{i}$ by Lemma 1.7.4. So

$$
\mid C_{i} / M \| r-1
$$

by Lemma 1.7 .1 and Lemma 1.5.1 But $(|C|, r-1)=1$ by Corolla ry 3.5.6 and $C_{i}$ must equal $M$. Thus

$$
\left|\mathcal{S}_{i}\right|=|C / M|
$$

and $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / \mathcal{S}_{i}\right)$ has

$$
(r-1)\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right)
$$

orbits viewed as a $C$-set by Lemma 5.2 .3 .

Now $H$ is contained in $G^{\prime}$, by Corolla ry 2.3.3, So $1_{H} \uparrow G^{\prime}$ is multiplicity-free and has exactly one irreducible constituent from each orbit of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ viewed as a $C$-set.

Let $T \in \mathcal{S}_{i}$. Suppose that $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$ and $\hat{\chi}$ is the corresponding character in $G^{\prime} / T$. Then

$$
\left\langle 1_{H} \uparrow G^{\prime}, \chi\right\rangle=\left\langle 1_{H T / T} \uparrow G^{\prime} / T, \tilde{\chi}\right\rangle,
$$

by Lemma 2.3.1. In particular, $1_{H T / T} \uparrow G^{\prime} / T$ is multiplicity-free.
Let $\overline{G^{\prime}}=G^{\prime} / T$,

$$
\bar{Z}=Z\left(G^{\prime}\right) / T=\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / T,
$$

$\overline{Z_{i}}=Z_{i} / T=Z\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$ and $\bar{H}=H T / T$.
If $H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) \notin T$, then $\bar{Z} \subseteq \bar{H}$. So

$$
\operatorname{ker}\left(1_{\bar{H}} \uparrow \overline{G^{\prime}}\right)=\bigcap_{\bar{g} \in \bar{G}^{\prime}}(\bar{H})^{\bar{g}} \supseteq \bar{Z}
$$

and no non-linear character of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$ can be a constituent of $1_{H} \uparrow G^{\prime}$.
Suppose that $H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq T$ and $\bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}$ has order $r^{\ell_{i}}$, then we claim that $\bar{H}$ intersects trivially with $\bar{Z}$ and

$$
d=\frac{1}{2} n+\frac{1}{2} \dot{k}_{i}-\grave{\ell} i .
$$

If $\bar{H} \cap \bar{Z} \neq 1$, then $\bar{Z} \subseteq \bar{H}$, because $\bar{Z}$ is cyclic of order $r$ and $T \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq$ $H T$. Hence by the Dedekind identity

$$
Z\left(G^{\prime}\right)=H T \cap Z\left(G^{\prime}\right)=T\left(H \cap Z\left(G^{\prime}\right)=T,\right.
$$

a contradiction. So $\bar{H}$ must intersect trivially with $\bar{Z}$.
In order to establish the second half of our claim we need to regard $\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z}$ as a subspace of $\overline{G^{\prime}} / \bar{Z}$, a vector space of dimension $n$ over $G F(r)$. Choose a basis

$$
\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{\ell_{i}}, q_{1}, \ldots, q_{n-d-\ell_{i}}\right\}
$$

for $\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z}$, where

$$
\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{\ell_{i}}\right\}
$$

form a basis for $\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z} \cap \overline{Z_{i}} / \bar{Z}$.
Let $\overline{Q_{i}} / \bar{Z}$ be a complementary subspace of $\overline{Z_{i}} / \bar{Z}$ in $\overline{G^{\prime}} / \bar{Z}$, where $\overline{Q_{i}}=Q_{i} / T$ and $Z\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq Q_{i}$ is extra-special, with a basis of the following form

$$
\left\{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{n-d-\ell_{i}}, \ldots, q_{n-k_{i}}\right\} .
$$

Then

$$
\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z}=\left(\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z} \cap \overline{Q_{i}} / \bar{Z}\right)\left(\bar{H} \bar{Z} / \bar{Z} \cap \overline{Z_{i}} / \bar{Z}\right)
$$

which implies that

$$
\bar{H} \subseteq \bar{H} \bar{Z}=\left(\bar{H} \bar{Z} \cap \bar{Q}_{i}\right)\left(\bar{H} \bar{Z} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}\right) .
$$

In consequence if $h \in \bar{H}$ then $h=q z$ for some $q \in \overline{Q_{i}}, z \in \overline{Z_{i}}$, where $q=h_{q} z_{q}$ and $z=h_{z} z_{2}, h_{q}, h_{z} \in \bar{H}$ and $z_{q}, z_{z} \in \bar{Z}$. Therefore $h=h_{q} z_{q} h_{z} z_{z}=q^{\prime} h_{z}$, where $q^{\prime} \in \overline{Q_{i}}$ and $h_{z} \in \bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}$.
Let $\overline{\bar{H}}=\bar{H} /\left(\bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}\right), \overline{\bar{Z}}=\bar{Z}\left(\bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}\right)$ and $\overline{Q_{i}}=\overline{Q_{i}}\left(\bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}\right) /\left(\bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}\right)$. Then from above

$$
\overline{\bar{H}} \subseteq \overline{Q_{i}}
$$

and

$$
\overline{\overline{Q_{i}}} \cong \overline{Q_{i}} / \overline{Q_{i}} \cap \bar{H} \cap \overline{Z_{i}} .
$$

But $\overline{Q_{i}} \cap \overline{Z_{i}}=\bar{Z}$ and $\bar{H} \cap \bar{Z}=1$. So

$$
\overline{\overline{Q_{i}}} \cong \overline{Q_{i}}
$$

Furthermore, $\overline{\bar{H}} \cap \overline{\bar{Z}}=1$ and

$$
1_{\overline{\bar{H}}} \uparrow \overline{\overline{Q_{i}}}
$$

is multiplicity-free. So by Lemma 1.4.6, $\overline{\bar{H}} \overline{\bar{Z}}$ is a maximal abelian normal subgroup of $\overline{Q_{i}}$ and $\overline{\bar{H}}$ has order $r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)}$. Hence

$$
|\bar{H}|=r^{\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{1}\right)+\ell_{i}}
$$

and

$$
r^{d+1}=\left|\overline{G^{\prime}}: \bar{H}\right|=r^{(n+1)-\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{1}\right)+\ell_{i}\right)}=r^{\frac{1}{2} n+\frac{1}{2} k_{i}-\ell_{i}+1}
$$

because $\bar{H} \cap \bar{Z}=1$. So

$$
d=\frac{1}{2} n+\frac{1}{2} k_{i}-\ell i
$$

as claimed.
Now if $H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq T$, then $1_{H} \uparrow \overline{G^{\prime}}$ has degree $r^{d+1}$ and the sum of the degrees of the non- linear irreducible constituents of $1_{H} \uparrow \overline{G^{\prime}}$ must equal ( $r-1$ ) $r^{d}$, since $\bar{H} \cap \bar{Z}=1$. Thus

$$
(r-1) r^{k_{i}-\ell_{i}}=(r-1) r^{d-\frac{1}{2}\left(n-k_{i}\right)}
$$

non-linear characters of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$ are constituents of $1_{H} \uparrow G^{\prime}$ and

$$
\left|\left\{T \in \mathcal{S}_{i}: H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) \subseteq T\right\}\right|=\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{i}-\ell_{i}}
$$

Suppose that $H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ has index $r^{x}$ in $\Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. Then $H \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ is contained in

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}
$$

elements of $\mathcal{S}$ and we have

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\sum_{i=1}^{\frac{r^{m}-1}{r-1} / \frac{|C|}{|M|}}\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{i}-\ell_{i}}
$$

Suppose that $n=m$ and $k_{i}=0$ for some $i$. Then $n=2 d$ and

$$
\ell_{i}=\frac{1}{2} k_{i}
$$

for all $i$. So $r=2$ by Corolla ry 3.5.4 and

$$
2^{\frac{1}{2} k_{i}} \left\lvert\, \frac{2^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right.
$$

for all $i$. So by Lemma 5.2.2

$$
|M|=2^{\frac{1}{2} k_{i}}+1
$$

for all $i$ satisfying $k_{i}>0$ and all the non-zero $k_{i}$ must be equal. Furthermore,

$$
\left(\frac{2^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / 2^{\frac{1}{2} k_{i}}=1
$$

for all $i$. So the equation

$$
2^{x}-1=\sum_{i=1}^{2^{n}-1 / \left\lvert\, \frac{|C|}{M \mid}\right.}\left(\frac{2^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / 2^{k_{i}-\ell_{1}}
$$

reduces to

$$
2^{x}-1=2^{n}-1 / \frac{|C|}{|M|}
$$

and we obtain

$$
|M|=\frac{2^{x}-1}{2^{d}-1}
$$

In the case where $k_{i}$ is greater than zero for some $i$. This implies that $x=n=k_{i}$, since $n=2 d$. But $n>k_{i}$ for all $i$. So if one of the $k_{i}$ equals zero then all the $k_{i}$ must equal zero contradicting Theorem 3.3.5.

So if $n=m$, then we may assume that all the $k_{i}>0$. Let $o=o(r) \bmod |M|$. Then $o \mid k_{i}$ and there exists an $o_{i}$ such that $k_{i}=o_{i} o$ for all $i$. Furthermore, if $o$ is odd then

$$
o_{i}-o_{j} \equiv 0 \bmod 2
$$

because $n-k_{i}$ is even for all $i$.
Let $a$ be the largest integer satisfying

$$
r^{a} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{o}-1}{|M|}+1\right.
$$

Then $a$ is less than $o$ and $a$ is the largest integer satisfying

$$
r^{a} \left\lvert\, \frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right.
$$

for all $i$, by Lemma 5.2.1. In particular, $a \geq k_{i}-\ell_{i}$ for all $i$ and there exists a $j$ such that

$$
k_{j}-\ell_{j}=a,
$$

because

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}
$$

is co-prime to $r$. Furthermore, if $o_{i}=\left(o_{j} \pm 2 y\right)$, then

$$
\ell_{i}=\frac{1}{2} k_{i}+\frac{1}{2} n-d=\frac{1}{2} o_{j} o \pm y o+\frac{1}{2} n-d=\ell_{j} \pm y o
$$

and

$$
k_{i}-\ell_{i}=o_{i} o-\ell_{j} \mp y o=o_{j} o \pm 2 y o-\ell_{j} \mp y o=k_{j}-\ell_{j} \pm y o=a \pm y o .
$$

But $0 \leq k_{i}-\ell_{i} \leq a<o$ for all $i$, so we may assume that all the $k_{i}$ equal $k_{j}$, if $o$ is odd.

If $o$ is even, then $k_{j}-\ell_{j} \leq \frac{1}{2} o$ by Lemma 5.2 .2 and consequently, if $m=n$ and all the $k_{i}>0$, then we may assume that all the $k_{i}$ are equal to $k_{j}$ for some $j$. So

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\left(\frac{r^{n}-1}{r-1} / \frac{|C|}{|M|}\right)\left(\frac{r^{k_{j}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{j}-\ell_{j}}
$$

and re-arranging the equation we obtain

$$
r^{k_{j}-\ell,} \frac{r^{x}-1}{r^{d}-1}=\left(r^{k_{j}}-1\right)+|M|
$$

and $d \mid x$. Furthermore, $d<x$, because $|M|$ is greater than 1. Expanding out the left hand side of this equation, we have

$$
r^{x-d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+r^{x-2 d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+\cdots+r^{d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+r^{k_{j}-\ell_{j}}=r^{k_{j}}-1+|M|
$$

But $|M|$ is greater than 1 and divides $r^{k_{j}}-1$. So

$$
r^{k_{j}}<r^{k_{j}}-1+|M|<r^{k_{j}+1}
$$

Furthermore,
$r^{x-d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}<r^{x-d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+r^{x-2 d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+\cdots+r^{d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}}+r^{k_{j}-\ell_{j}}<r^{x-d+k_{j}-\ell_{j}+1}$.

So $x-d+k_{j}-\ell_{i}=k_{j}$, forcing $x=d+\ell_{j}$. Thus

$$
d \mid \ell_{j}
$$

since $d \mid x$. Hence

$$
d \mid k_{j}
$$

because $d \mid n+k_{j}-2 \ell_{j}$ and $d \mid n$. So

$$
d \mid k_{j}-\ell_{j}
$$

and

$$
\frac{1}{2} n-\frac{1}{2} k_{j}=d-k_{j}+\ell_{j} \leq 0
$$

contradicting the fact that $n>k_{j}$.
So we may assume without loss of generality that $m<n$ and consequently, by Theorem 1.2 .5 , either $n=6$ and $r=2$ or there exists a prime $q$ dividing $|M|$ satisfying the following statements.
(a) $q$ divides $r^{n}-1$.
(b) $q$ does not divide $r^{2}-1$ whenever $0<i<n$.

Assume that $n \neq 6$ or $r \neq 2$. Then $|M|$ acts irreducibly on $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$ and consequently $k_{i}=0$ for all $i$, which forces $n=2 d$. So $r$ must equal 2 by

Corolla ry 3.5.4 and $G^{\prime} / T$ is an extra- special 2 -group of order $2^{2 d+1}$ for all $T \in \mathcal{S}$. Furthermore, there exists a $T \in \mathcal{S}$ such that

$$
H T / T \cap \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / T=1 .
$$

So $G^{\prime} / T$ has an elementary abelian subgroup $H T / T \times \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right) / T$ of order $2^{d+1}$. Thus $G^{\prime} / T$ is a central product of $d$ dihedral groups of order 8 with amalgamated centres by Theorem 1.4.2 and $M$ can be viewed as a subgroup of $\operatorname{Aut}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)$. In particular,

$$
|M|=\left|M \operatorname{Inn}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right) / \operatorname{Inn}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)\right|
$$

divides

$$
\left|\operatorname{Aut}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right) / \operatorname{Inn}\left(G^{\prime} / T\right)\right|,
$$

which in turn divides

$$
2^{(2 d(2 d-2) / 4)+1}\left(2^{d}-1\right) \Pi_{i=1}^{d-1}\left(2^{2 i}-1\right),
$$

by Theorem 1.4.4. But this contradicts our assumption that there exists a prime $\boldsymbol{q}$ dividing the order of $M$ satisfying the statements above.

If $n=6, r=2$ and $M$ acts irreducibly on $G^{\prime} / \Phi\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. Then as above $k_{i}$ must equal 0 for all $i$. So $d=3$,

$$
|M|=|C|=9,
$$

by Theorem 1.1.1, and $m=1$. Thus $G^{\prime}$ is a central product of 3 dihedral groups of order 8 and $M$ is isomorphic to a subgroup of

$$
\operatorname{Aut}\left(G^{\prime}\right) / \operatorname{Inn}\left(G^{\prime}\right)
$$

which in turn is isomorphic to a subgroup of $S_{8}$. But this cannot not happen, because $S_{8}$ contains no element of order 9 . The proof is complete.

### 5.3 Example C

The following example of a finite group satisfying the conditions above can best be described using a construction of Higman in his paper on Suzuki 2 - groups [8]. We shall digress for a moment in order to place the example within context and also because we will need to visit Higman's paper again in another context.

Suppose that $F=G F\left(2^{n}\right)$ and $\theta$ is an automorphism of $F$. We denote by $A(n, \theta)$ the set of all matrices of the form

$$
u(a, b)=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
a & 1 & 0 \\
b & a \theta & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $a, b \in F$. Then

$$
u(a, b) u\left(a^{\prime}, b^{\prime}\right)=u\left(a+a^{\prime}, b+b^{\prime}+a^{\prime}(a \theta)\right),
$$

and

$$
u(a, b)^{-1}=u(a, b+a(a \theta)) .
$$

So $A(n, \theta)$ is a group of order $2^{2 n}$ with unit element $u(0,0)$. The mapping $u(a, b) \rightarrow a$ is a homomorphism of $A(n, \theta)$ onto the additive group of $F$ with kernel

$$
\mathcal{R}=\{u(0, b) \mid b \in F\} .
$$

Thus there is an isomorphism $\tilde{\rho}$ of $A(n, \theta) / \mathcal{R}$ onto $F$ such that

$$
(u(a, b) \mathcal{R}) \bar{\rho}=a .
$$

Also there is an isomorphism $\tilde{\sigma}$ of $\mathcal{R}$ onto $F$ given by

$$
u(0, b) \tilde{\sigma}=b
$$

and

$$
\left(u(a, b)^{2}\right) \bar{\sigma}=a(a \theta) .
$$

Note that $\mathcal{R}-\{1\}$ is the set of involutions in $A(n, \theta)$, and that $A(n, \theta)$ is abelian if and only if $\theta=1$. Note also that if $\lambda \in F^{\times}$, there is an automorphism $\xi_{\lambda}$ of $A(n, \theta)$ given by

$$
u(a, b) \xi_{\lambda}=u(\lambda a, \lambda(\lambda \theta) b)
$$

Theorem 5.3.1 Let $F=G F\left(2^{n}\right)$, and let $\theta$ be an automorphism of $F$.
(a) The mapping $a \rightarrow a(a \theta)$ of $F$ into $F$ is injective if and only if $\theta$ is of odd order.
(b) If $\theta$ is of odd order, there exists $\lambda \in F$ such that the set of involutions of $A(n, \theta)$ is transitively permuted by $<\xi_{\lambda}>$.
(c) If $\theta$ is of even order, the set of involutions of $A(n, \theta)$ is intransitively permuted by the group of automorphisms of $A(n, \theta)$.

Proof. Huppert and Blackburn [7, Theorem 6.9, page 296].
a) Put $a \chi=a(a \theta)\left(a \in F^{\times}\right)$. Then $\chi$ is an endomorphism of $F^{\times}$. If $\operatorname{ker} \chi \neq 1$, there exists $a \neq 1$ such that $a \theta=a^{-1}$, so the order of $\theta$ is even. If the order of $\theta$ is even, the subfield of elements fixed by $\theta^{2}$ is different from the subfield $F_{1}$ of elements fixed by $\theta$. Thus there exists $a \in F$ such that
$a \theta \neq a, a \theta^{2}=a$. Then $a(a \theta) \in F_{1}^{\times}$, so, since $\left|F_{1}^{\times}\right|$is odd, there exists $b \in F_{1}$ such that $b^{2}=a(a \theta)$. Let $c=a b^{-1} ; c \neq 1$ since $a \notin F_{1}$. Thus $c \theta=(a \theta)(b \theta)^{-1}=(a \theta) b^{-1}=b a^{-1}$, by definition of $b$. Hence $c \theta=c^{-1}$ and $\operatorname{ker} \chi \neq 1$.
b) Suppose that $\theta$ is of odd order. Let $\omega$ be a generator of $F^{\times}$. By a), there exists $\lambda \in F$ such that $\lambda(\lambda \theta)=\omega$. Then $u(0, b) \xi_{\lambda}=u(\lambda 0, \omega b)$, so $\xi_{\lambda}$ has the stated property.
c) Suppose that $\theta$ is of even order. By a), $\chi$ is not injective and thus not surjective. Hence there exists $a \in F$ such that $a$ is not of the form $b(b \theta)$ with $b \in F$; thus $a \bar{\sigma}^{-1}$ is an involution in $A(n, \theta)$ but is not a square. Since $A(n, \theta)$ is of exponent 4 , some involutions are squares. The assertion follows at once.

Definition 5.3.2 A Suzuki 2-group is a group $G$ which has the following properties.
(a) $G$ is a non-abelian 2-group.
(b) $G$ has more than one involution.
(c) There exists a soluble group of automorphisms of $G$ which permutes the set of involutions in $G$ transitively.

Theorem 5.3.3 Let $G$ be a Suzuki 2-group.
(a) $G^{\prime}=\Phi(G)=Z(G)=\left\{x \mid x \in G, x^{2}=1\right\}$.
(b) Either (i) $G \cong A(n, \theta)$ for some non-identity automorphism $\theta$ of $G F\left(2^{n}\right)$ of odd order, or (ii) $|G|=|Z(G)|^{3}$.

Proof. Huppert and Blackburn [7, Theorem 7.9, page 313].
Let $F=G F\left(2^{6}\right)$, let $\theta$ be the automorphism of $F$ of order 6 defined by

$$
a^{\theta}=a^{2}
$$

for all $a \in F$, and $F^{\times}=<\lambda>$. Let $\mu=\lambda^{7}$ and let

$$
G=[A(6, \theta)] C
$$

be the semi-direct product of $A(6, \theta)$, which is not a Suzuki 2-group by Theorem 5.3.3, and $C=\left\langle\xi_{\mu}\right\rangle$, a cyclic group of order 9. Let

$$
N=<u\left(0, \lambda^{24}\right), u\left(0, \lambda^{3}\right), u\left(0, \lambda^{43}\right), u\left(0, \lambda^{12}\right)>
$$

Then $(G / N)^{\prime}=A(6, \theta) / N$, the Frattini subgroup $\Phi\left((G / N)^{\prime}\right)=\mathcal{R} / N$, and $G / N$ satisfies the statements in Theorem 5.2 .4 with $r=2, n=6$ and $m=2$. Furthermore, if

$$
H=<u\left(\lambda^{21}, \lambda^{40}\right), u\left(\lambda^{12}, \lambda^{20}\right), u\left(\lambda^{48}, \lambda^{10}\right)>
$$

then $H N / N$ is a model subgroup of $G / N$.

### 5.4 Case E

Theorem 5.4.1 Let $G=G_{1} G_{2}$ be a finite group satisfying the following statements.
(a) $G_{i}=G_{i}^{\prime} C_{i}$;
(b) $\left(\left|G_{i}^{\prime}\right|,\left|C_{i}\right|\right)=1$;
(c) $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is elementary abelian;
(d) $G_{1}^{\prime} G_{2}^{\prime}$ is a special r-group;
(e) $K=\left[G_{1}^{\prime}, G_{2}^{\prime}\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ of order $r^{m}$;
(f) $G / K=G_{1} / K \times G_{2} / K$;
(g) $G_{i} / K$ is a Frobenius group at $C_{i} K / K$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ of order $r^{n_{1}}$.

Then either $G$ does not admit a model subgroup or $r=2$,

$$
\left|C_{i}\right|=2^{\frac{1}{2} n_{1}}+1,
$$

for $i=1,2$.
Proof. The proof follows along identical lines to that of Theorem 5.2.4 and consequently we shall only outline the key steps.

First note by Theorem 1.1.1, that we may assume without loss of generality that $M=C_{G}(K) \cap\left(C_{1} \times C_{2}\right)=\left\langle\left(c_{1}^{s_{1}}, c_{2}^{s_{2}}\right)\right\rangle$, where

$$
s_{i}=\frac{\left|C_{i}\right|}{\left(\left|C_{1}\right|,\left|C_{2}\right|\right)},
$$

for $i=1,2$ and $C_{1}=\left\langle c_{1}\right\rangle$ and $C_{2}=\left\langle c_{2}\right\rangle$ Furthermore, $m=\operatorname{lcm}\left(n_{1}, n_{2}\right)$.
Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H K / K$ is a model subgroup of $G / K=G_{1} / K \times G_{2} / K$, by Theorem 2.3.2. So

$$
H K / K=\left(H K / K \cap G_{1} / K\right) \times\left(H K / K \cap G_{2} / K\right),
$$

and $H K / K \cap G_{i} / K$ is a model subgroup of $G_{i} / K$, by Theorem 2.4.2, a Frobenius group with Frobenius complement $C_{i} K / K$ and abelian Frobenius
kernel $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$. Therefore Theorem 3.2.1 states that $C_{i} \cong C_{i} K / K$ is cyclic of odd order and

$$
\left|G_{i}: G_{i}^{\prime}\right|=\left|C_{i}\right|=\frac{r^{n_{i}}-1}{r^{d_{i}}-1},
$$

for some $d_{i}$ dividing $n_{i}$ and the index of $H K / K \cap G_{i} / K$ in $G_{i}^{\prime} / K$ is $r^{d_{i}}$ by Theorem 1.6.4.

Let $\mathcal{S}$ be the set of maximal subgroups of $K$. Let

$$
\left\{T_{1}, \ldots, T_{j}\right\}
$$

be a complete set of orbit representatives of $\mathcal{S}$ viewed as a $C_{1} \times C_{2}$ set. Let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}, \ldots, \mathcal{S}_{j}
$$

be the $C_{1} \times C_{2}$-orbit containing $T_{i}$ and let

$$
r^{k_{i}+1}=\left|Z\left(G_{1}^{\prime} G_{2}^{\prime} / T_{i}\right)\right| .
$$

Then we obtain

$$
S_{i}=\frac{\left|C_{1} \times C_{2}\right|}{|M|}
$$

and

$$
d_{1}+d_{2}=\frac{1}{2} n_{1}+\frac{1}{2} n_{2}+\frac{1}{2} k_{i}-\ell i,
$$

where

$$
r^{\ell_{i}}=\left|H T / T \cap Z\left(G_{1}^{\prime} G_{2}^{\prime} / T\right)\right|,
$$

for all $T \in \mathcal{S}_{i}$ satisfying $H \cap K \subseteq T$. Furthermore,

$$
\left|\left\{T \in \mathcal{S}_{\mathrm{i}}: H \cap K \subseteq T\right\}\right|=\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{i}-\ell_{\mathrm{i}}}
$$

and if $H \cap K$ has index $r^{x}$ in $K$, then

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\sum_{i=1}^{\frac{r^{m}-1}{r-1}} \sum^{\left\lvert\, \frac{\left|C_{1} \times C_{2}\right|}{|M|}\right.}\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{i}-\ell_{i}}
$$

Suppose that $|M|=1$. Then $m=n_{1} n_{2}$ and we obtain

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\sum_{i=1}^{\frac{r^{n_{1} n_{2}}-1}{r-1} /\left|C_{1} \times C_{2}\right|} r^{\ell_{i}}
$$

So $\ell_{i}=0$ for some $i$, because $\left(r^{x}-1\right) /(r-1)$ is prime to $r$. But if $\ell_{i}=0$, then $k_{i}=0$, because

$$
d_{1}+d_{2} \leq \frac{1}{2} n_{1}+\frac{1}{2} n_{2}
$$

and we may assume without loss of generality that $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for $i=1,2$.
Suppose that $|M| \neq 1$ and $k_{i}=0$ for some $i$. Then $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for $i=1,2$.
Suppose that all the $k_{i}>0$ and equal. Then we obtain

$$
\frac{r^{x}-1}{r-1}=\left(\frac{r^{m}-1}{r-1} / \frac{\left|C_{1} \times C_{2}\right|}{|M|}\right)\left(\left(\frac{r^{k_{i}}-1}{|M|}+1\right) / r^{k_{i}-\ell_{i}}\right)
$$

and it can be shown that $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for $i=1,2$. The result now follows.

### 5.5 Example E

Definition 5.5.1 Let $G$ be a finite $r$-group and let $\mathcal{S}$ be the set of maximal subgroups of $Z(G)$. Then we say that $G$ is semi-extra-special if $G / T$ is extraspecial for all $T \in \mathcal{S}$.

Lemma 5.5.2 Let $G$ be a semi-extra-special $r$-group. Then $G$ is special and if the order of $G / \Phi(G)$ is $r^{n}$, then $n$ is even.

Proof. Beisiegel [6, Lemma 1].
In the case where $p=2$ the next result can be regarded as a Corollary of Theorem 3.3.5 as has already been stated in the introduction.

Theorem 5.5.3 If $G$ is a semi-extra-special $r$-group and $G / \Phi(G)$ has order $r^{2 n}$, then $|\Phi(G)| \leq r^{n}$.

Proof. Beisiegel [6, Satz 1]. Let $\left\{z_{i} \mid 1 \leq i \leq m\right\}$ be a basis of the group $G^{\prime}=\Phi(G)$ regarded as a $G F(r)$ vector space. Then

$$
\left[g G^{\prime}, h G^{\prime}\right]=\sum_{i=1}^{m} f_{i}\left(g G^{\prime}, h^{\prime} G^{\prime}\right) z_{i}
$$

where the $f_{\mathrm{z}}$ are symplectic scalar products of $G / G^{\prime}$ regarded as a $G F(r)$ vector space. Let $A_{i}$ denote the matrix of $f_{i}$ with respect to a fixed basis of $G / G^{\prime}$. Since $G$ is semi-extra-special, the scalar product.

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m} \lambda_{i} f_{i}
$$

is not regular only if all the $\lambda_{i}=0$. Thus the equation

$$
0=\operatorname{Det}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m} \lambda_{i} A_{i}\right)
$$

has only the trivial solution. But the right side of this equation is the square of a homogeneous polynomial of degree $n$ in the variables $\lambda_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq m$ and consequently has non-trivial solutions, if the number of variables is greater than the degree of the polynomial by Chevalley's Theorem. The proof is complete.

Definition 5.5.4 If $G$ is a semi-extra-special $r$-group, $G / \Phi(G)$ has order $r^{2 n}$ and $\Phi(G)$ has order $r^{n}$, then we say that $G$ is ultra-special.

Lemma 5.5.5 Let $r$ be a prime, let $L$ be a field with $r^{n}$ elements, let $K$ be the prime subfield of $L$ and define the following multiplication on the cartesian product $P=L^{(3)}$

$$
(a, b, c)\left(a^{\prime}, b^{\prime}, c^{\prime}\right)=\left(a+a^{\prime}, b+b^{\prime}, c+c^{\prime}+f\left(a, b^{\prime}\right)\right)
$$

where $f$ is a $K$-bilinear map from $L \times L$ into $L$. Then
(a) $P$ is an r-group of class at most 2 with respect to this multiplication;
(b) $P$ is ultra-special if and only if

$$
\{f(a, \ell) \mid \ell \in L\}=\{f(\ell, a) \mid \ell \in L\}
$$

for all $0 \neq a \in L$.

Proof. Beisiegel [6, Lemma 3].
Let $F=G F\left(2^{2 n}\right)$, let $F^{\times}=<\lambda>$, and let $\mu=\lambda^{2^{n}-1}$. Suppose that $P$ is the set of matrices of the form

$$
u(a, b, c)=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
a & 1 & 0 \\
c & b & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $a, b, c \in F$. Then

$$
u(a, b, c) u\left(a^{\prime}, b^{\prime}, c^{\prime}\right)=u\left(a+a^{\prime}, b+b^{\prime}, c+c^{\prime}+a^{\prime} b\right)
$$

and setting $f\left(a, b^{\prime}\right)=a b^{\prime}$ in Lemma 5.5 .5 we see that $P$ is an ultra- special 2 group. Let $\alpha$ be the map from $P$ to $P$ defined by

$$
u(a, b, c) \alpha=u(\mu a, b, \mu c)
$$

and let $\beta$ be the map from $P$ to $P$ defined by

$$
u(a, b, c) \beta=u\left(a, \mu^{-1} b, \mu^{-1} c\right)
$$

for all $a, b, c \in F$. Then $\alpha, \beta \in A u t(P)$ and

$$
\alpha \beta=\beta \alpha
$$

Furthermore, if $C_{1}=\langle\alpha\rangle$ and $C_{2}=\langle\beta\rangle$, then

$$
C=<\alpha, \beta>=C_{1} \times C_{2}
$$

since $C_{1} \cap C_{2}=1$. Let

$$
G=[P]\left(C_{1} \times C_{2}\right)
$$

be the semi-direct product of $P$ and $C_{1} \times C_{2}$. Let

$$
P_{1}=\{u(a, 0, c) \mid a, c \in F\}
$$

and let

$$
G_{1}=\left[P_{1}\right] C_{1} \subseteq G
$$

Let

$$
P_{2}=\{u(0, b, c) \mid b, c \in F\}
$$

and let

$$
G_{2}=\left[P_{2}\right] C_{2} \subseteq G
$$

Then $G_{i}^{\prime}=P_{i}$ for $i=1,2$ and

$$
K=\{u(0,0, c) \mid c \in F\}=\left[G_{1}^{\prime}, G_{2}^{\prime}\right]
$$

is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$. Furthermore, $G=G_{1} G_{2}$ satisfies the statements in Theorem 5.4 .1 with $r=2$,

$$
\left|C_{i}\right|=2^{n}+1
$$

and $m=n_{1}=n_{2}=2 n$. Now suppose that $J=G F\left(2^{n}\right)$ and

$$
H=\{u(d, e, f) \mid d, e, f \in J\}
$$

Then $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$.

### 5.6 Case F

We now look at minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups satisfying

$$
\left(\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G^{\prime}: G^{\prime \prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

and the conditions outlined in Case F. Before moving onto the main result we will prove a well-known result of Burnside and then look at a restricted case which introduces the techniques in this section as well as highlighting a very near miss.

Theorem 5.6.1 Let $X$ be a $G$-set and let $t$ be the number of orbits of $G$ on X. Suppose that

$$
F(g)=\{x \in X \mid x g=x\}
$$

for all $g \in G$. Then

$$
t|G|=\sum_{g \in G}|F(g)|
$$

Proof. Let $E=\{(x, g) \in X \times G \mid x g=g\}$. Then

$$
|E(x, .)|=\left|G_{x}\right| \text { and }|E(., g)|=|F(g)| .
$$

Applying the counting principle

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{g \in G}|F(g)| & =\sum_{x \in X}\left|G_{x}\right| \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{t} \sum_{x \in x_{i} G}\left|G_{x}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{t}$ are representatives of the the $t$ orbits. But if $x \in x_{i} G$, then $G_{x_{i}}=g^{-1} G_{x} g$ where $x g=x_{i}$, so that $\left|G_{x_{i}}\right|=\left|G_{x}\right|$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{g \in G}|F(g)| & =\sum_{i=1}^{t}\left|x_{i} G\right|\left|G_{x}\right| \\
& =t|G|
\end{aligned}
$$

and the proof is complete.
Theorem 5.6.2 Let $G$ be a finite soluble group satisfying the following conditions.
(a) $G=G^{\prime \prime} X$;
(b) $G^{\prime \prime} \cap X=1$;
(c) $G^{\prime \prime}$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(d) $X=N C$ is a Frobenius group with cyclic Frobenius complement $C=$ $<c>$ of order $p$ and minimal Frobenius kernel $N$ of order $p+1$, where $p=2^{m}-1$ is a prime.

Then $G$ does not possess a model subgroup.
Proof. Let $V$ denote $G^{\prime \prime}$ regarded as a faithful irreducible $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$-module and let $W$ be a $\mathbb{F}_{q}[N]$-submodule of $V$. Then

$$
V=\sum_{x \in X} W x
$$

and $C_{N}(W)<N$, because $C_{X}(V)=1$. Furthermore, the abelian group $N / C_{N}(W)$ is cyclic of order $2, q$ is odd, the submodule $W \cong \mathbb{F}_{q}$, and $w n=$ $(q-1) w$ for all $n \in N-C_{N}(W)$ and $w \in W$ by Theorem 1.1.1. So $C_{N}(W)=$ $M$, where $M$ is a maximal subgroup of $N$ and $C_{N}(W x)=M^{x}$ for all $x \in X$. But $W n=W$ for all $n \in N$ and $W c^{i} \neq W c^{j}$ for $i \neq j \in\{0, \ldots, p-1\}$, since $C$ acts regularly on the set of maximal subgroups of $N$. So, by Clifford's Theorem [1, Theorem 6.5, page 80 ],

$$
V=\bigoplus_{i=0}^{p-1} W c^{i}
$$

In other words $V$ is the induced $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$-module $W^{X}$ of dimension $p$. Furthermore, if $x \in X-N$ and $w \in W-\{0\}$, then the set

$$
\left\{w, w x, \ldots, w x^{p-1}\right\}
$$

is a basis for $V$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. So if $x \in X-N$ and $w \in W-\{0\}$, then

$$
C_{V}(x)=\left\langle w+w x+w x^{2}+\cdots+w x^{p-1}\right\rangle
$$

and

$$
\left|C_{G^{\prime \prime}}(x)\right|=\left|C_{V}(x)\right|=q .
$$

If $1 \neq n \in N$, then $\left(w c^{i}\right) n=w c^{i}$ if $n \in M^{c^{1}}$ and $\left(w c^{1}\right) n=(q-1) w c^{1}$ if $n \notin M^{c^{c}}$ for all $i \in\{0, \ldots, p-1\}$ and $w \in W$. So, if $1 \neq n \in N$, then

$$
C_{V}(n)=\left\langle x c^{c^{2}} \mid n \in M^{c^{\prime}}\right\rangle
$$

and

$$
\left|C_{G^{\prime \prime}}(n)\right|=\left|C_{V}(n)\right|=q^{2^{m-1}-1}=q^{(p-1) / 2} .
$$

Let $t$ denote the number of orbits of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$ viewed as an $X$-set. Then, remembering that $G^{\prime \prime}$ is abelian, we obtain

$$
t=\frac{q^{p}+p q^{(p-1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) q}{(p+1) p},
$$

by Theorem 5.6.1 and Theorem 1.6.2.
Now since $X$ is a Frobenius group with cyclic Frobenius complement of order $p$ and minimal Frobenius kernel of order $p+1$, where $p=2^{m}-1$ is a prime, a proper subgroup of $X$ is either cyclic of order $p$ or is elementary abelian of order $2^{\ell}$, where $\ell \leq m$.

Let $l_{G^{\prime \prime}} \neq \lambda \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$. Then $I_{X}(\lambda)$ is a proper subgroup of $X$, and is as a consquence either cyclic of order $p$ or elementary abelian of order $2^{2}$,
where $\ell \leq m$. If $I_{X}(\lambda)$ is cyclic of prime order $p$, then $\lambda$ extends to $I_{X}(\lambda)$ by Isaacs [1, Corollary 6.20, page 86 ] and if $I_{X}(\lambda)$ is elementary abelian of order $2^{\ell}$, then the linear character $\lambda$, whose order is $q$, extends to $I_{X}(\lambda)$ by Isaacs [ 1, Theorem 6.26 , page 89 ]. So

$$
\lambda \uparrow^{G}=\chi_{1}+\cdots+\chi_{k}
$$

where $k=\left|I_{X}(\lambda)\right|$ and $\chi_{i}$ is irreducible of degree $\left|X: I_{X}(\lambda)\right|$ for all $i$, by Isaacs [1, Theorem 6.11 and Theorem 6.17, page 82 and 85 ]. Let

$$
1_{G^{\prime \prime}}=\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{t}
$$

be a set of orbit representatives of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$ viewed as an $X$-set and let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{i}=\left\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G) \mid<\chi_{G^{\prime \prime}}, \lambda_{i}>\neq 0\right\}
$$

for $i \in\{1, \ldots, t\}$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)=\mathcal{S}_{1} \cup \cdots \cup \mathcal{S}_{t}
$$

by Isaacs [1, Theorem 6.2, page 79]. Now

$$
\sum_{x \in S_{\mathbf{i}}} \chi(1)=|X|=p(p+1)
$$

for $i \in\{2, \ldots, t\}$ and

$$
\sum_{x \in \mathcal{S}_{1}} x(1)=2 p
$$

by Theorem 1.6.4, because $\mathcal{S}_{1}=\operatorname{Irr}\left(G / G^{\prime \prime}\right)$ by Isaacs [1, Theorem 6.17, page 85]. Thus

$$
\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{lr}(G)} \chi(1)=2 p+p(p+1)(t-1)
$$

and substituting in the value above for $t$, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi(1) & =2 p+p(p+1)\left[\frac{q^{p}+p q^{(p-1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) q}{(p+1) p}-1\right] \\
& =2 p+q^{p}+p q^{(p-1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) q-(p+1) p
\end{aligned}
$$

Now suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $H G^{\prime \prime} / G^{\prime \prime}$ is a model subgroup of $G / G^{\prime \prime}$ by Theorem 2.3.2 and

$$
\left|\frac{H}{H \cap G^{\prime \prime}}\right|=\left|\frac{H G^{\prime \prime}}{G^{\prime \prime}}\right|=2^{m-1}
$$

since

$$
\sum_{x \in \operatorname{lr}\left(G / G^{\prime \prime}\right)} x(1)=2 p
$$

by Theorem 1.6.4. So there exists an $\ell>0$ such that

$$
|H|=2^{m-1} q^{p-\ell}
$$

where the order of $H \cap G^{\prime \prime}$ is $q^{p-\ell}$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 p q^{\ell} & =\sum_{x \in \operatorname{lrr}(G)} \chi(1) \\
& =2 p+q^{p}+p q^{(p-1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) q-(p+1) p
\end{aligned}
$$

Re-arranging the equation we obtain

$$
2 p q^{\ell}=q^{p}+p q^{(p-1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) q-(p-1) p
$$

So either $p=q$ or $q$ divides $(p-1)$.
If $q$ divides $(p-1)$, then there exists an $a \geq 1$ such that $q^{a}$ divides $(p-1)$, but $q^{a+1}$ does not. Now

$$
q^{(p-1) / 2}>2^{(p-1) / 2}=2^{u} \geq 2 u=(p-1)
$$

where $p=2 u+1$. So $(p-1) / 2>a$ and consequently $a$ must equal $\ell$. So

$$
2 p q^{\ell}=2 p q^{a}<2 p(p-1)<2 p^{2}
$$

But

$$
2 p q^{\ell}>(p-1)(p+1) q-(p-1) p=p^{2}(q-1)-q+p>2 p^{2}
$$

and we may assume without loss of generality that $p=q$.
If $p=q$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 p^{\ell+1} & =p^{p}+p^{(p+1) / 2}+(p-1)(p+1) p-(p-1) p \\
& =p^{p}+p^{(p+1) / 2}+p^{3}-p-p^{2}+p \\
& =p^{p}+p^{(p+1) / 2}+p^{3}-p^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Clearly, $\ell$ must be greater than or equal to $p-1$. Furthermore, if $p>3$, then the largest power of $p$ dividing the right-hand side is 2 and consequently the equality cannot hold. So we may assume without loss of generality that $p=q=3$.

If $p=q=3$, then

$$
2 \times 3^{\ell+1}=27+9+27-9=54
$$

and $\ell$ must equal 2. So $X \cong A_{4}$, the unique minimal normal subgroup $G^{\prime \prime}$ has order 27, and the model subgroup $H$ has order 6. Furthermore, $G$ has three linear characters $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$, one irreducible character $\mu$ of degree 3 , six irreducible characters $\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{6}$ of degree 4 , two irreducible characters $\phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ of degree six and one irreducible character $\chi$ of degree 12 . In addition if $J$ is any subgroup of $G^{\prime \prime} N$ of order 6 , then

$$
1_{J} \uparrow^{G}=\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\lambda_{3}+\mu+2 \phi_{1}+2 \phi_{2}+2 \chi
$$

5. Case Studies
or

$$
1_{J} \uparrow^{G}=\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\lambda_{3}+\mu+1 \phi_{1}+3 \phi_{2}+2 \chi
$$

or

$$
1_{J} \uparrow^{G}=\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\lambda_{3}+\mu+\theta_{1}+\theta_{2}+\theta_{3}+\theta_{4}+\theta_{5}+\theta_{6}+2 \phi_{2}+\chi
$$

The result now follows, because $H$ must be contained in $G^{\prime \prime} N$ by Corolla ry 2.3.3.

Lemma 5.6.3 Let $G=N C$, where $G$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $N$ of order $r^{n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement $C$ of order $z$. Let $S$ be a maximal subgroup of $N$ and let

$$
k(x)=\left|\left\{c \in C: x \in S^{c}\right\}\right|
$$

for all $x \in N$. Suppose that $z=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}$ for some $d$ dividing $n$ and $(z, r-1)=1$. Then either $n=2 d$ or

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k(x) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

for all $1 \neq x \in N$.
Proof. Suppose that $C=\langle c\rangle$. Then $N$ can be viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}\{C]$-module via the $C$-action

$$
x c^{i}=x^{c^{i}}
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $0 \leq i \leq z-1$. Since each element of $C$ acts fixed-point freely on $N$ via conjugation by Lemma 1.7.1, the $C$-action is faithful and we
can apply Theorem 1.1.1 to an irreducible submodule $M$ of $N$. Thus there exists a primitive $z$ th root of unity $\epsilon$ of $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$, by Lemma 3.4.10, such that $M$ is isomorphic to $F$ viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}[C]$-module via the $C$-action

$$
x c^{2}=x \epsilon^{1} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in F$ and $0 \leq i \leq z-1$. Since $M$ is isomorphic to $F$ viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{r}[C]$-module, $M$ must equal $N$ and we can assume without loss of generality that

$$
G=[N]\langle\epsilon\rangle,
$$

the external semi-direct product of $N=F^{+}$and $\langle\epsilon\rangle$ via $\sigma$, where $\sigma$ is the homomorphism from $\langle\epsilon\rangle$ to $\operatorname{Aut}(N)$ defined by

$$
x^{\sigma\left(\epsilon^{i}\right)}=x \epsilon^{i} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $0 \leq i \leq z-1$.
Let $R=\mathbb{F}_{r}$ be the prime subfield of $F$ and let $R^{\times}=\langle\mu\rangle$. Suppose that

$$
\vec{G}=[N](<\epsilon>\times<\mu>),
$$

the external semi-direct product of $N$ and $\langle\epsilon\rangle \times\langle\mu>$ via $\tau$, where $\tau$ is the homomorphism from $\langle\epsilon\rangle \times\langle\mu\rangle$ to $\operatorname{Aut}(N)$ defined by

$$
x^{\tau\left(\epsilon^{\prime} \mu^{j}\right)}=x \epsilon^{1} \mu^{3} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $0 \leq i \leq z-1,0 \leq j \leq r-1$. Then

$$
k(x)=\left|\left\{i \in\{0, \ldots, z-1\}: x \in S^{\mathrm{c}^{\prime}}\right\}\right|
$$

for all $x \in N$. For $y \in N$, let $\chi_{y}$ denote the linear character of $N$ defined by

$$
\chi_{y}(x)=e^{2 \pi i T r_{F}(y x) / r}
$$

for all $x \in N$. Then by Theorem 3.4.4 there exists a $0 \neq y \in N$ such that the kernel of the linear character $\chi_{y}$ is $S$. Furthermore,

$$
\operatorname{Tr}_{F}\left(y \mu^{j} x\right)=\mu^{j} T r_{F}(y x)
$$

for all $x \in N$ and all $0 \leq j \leq r-1$, by Theorem 3.4.2. So

$$
\chi_{y}, \chi_{y \mu}, \ldots, \chi_{y \mu^{r-1}}
$$

are the non-trivial characters of $\operatorname{Irr}(N)$ whose kernels contain $S$. Hence

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \chi_{y \mu}(x)=r-1
$$

if $x \in S$, and

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \chi_{y \mu}(x)=-1
$$

if $x \notin S$. Now applying Theorem 3.4 .6 we see that $\chi_{y}^{\hat{}}$ is an irreducible character of $\hat{G}$,

$$
\chi_{y}^{\hat{G}}(x)=\sum_{i=0}^{z-1} \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \chi_{y \epsilon-{ }^{-} \mu}(x)
$$

for all $x \in N$ and $\chi_{y}^{\dot{G}}$ vanishes outside $N$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\chi_{y}^{\hat{\theta}}(x) & =\sum_{i=0}^{z-1} \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \chi_{y \mu}\left(x^{e^{-i}}\right) \\
& =(r-1) k(x)-(z-k(x)) \\
& =r k(x)-z,
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
(r-1) z r^{n}=|\bar{G}|=\sum_{\hat{g} \in \tilde{G}} \chi_{y}^{\hat{G}}(\hat{g})^{2}=(r-1)^{2} z^{2}+\sum_{0 \neq x \in N} \chi_{y}^{\hat{G}}(x)^{2}
$$

Suppose that there exists a $0 \neq x \in N$ such that

$$
\left|\chi_{y}^{\bar{G}}(x)\right|>\frac{z}{r}
$$

Then

$$
(r-1) z r^{n}>(r-1)^{2} z^{2}+z(r-1)\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2}
$$

from above and because every non-zero element of $N$ is contained in a conjugacy class of length $z(r-1)$. So

$$
r^{n}>(r-1) z+\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2}
$$

But $r^{n}=z\left(r^{d}-1\right)+1$, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
z\left(r^{d}-1\right)+1 & >(r-1) z+\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2} \\
z\left(r^{d}-1\right) & \geq(r-1) z+\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

and after re-arranging the equation we obtain

$$
r^{d+2}-r^{3} \geq z=r^{(l-1) d}+r^{(\ell-2) d}+\cdots+r^{d}+1
$$

where $\ell=n / d$. It is straightforward to show that this equality holds only if $\ell=2$. Thus if there exists a $0 \neq x \in N$ such that

$$
\left|\chi_{\nu}^{\bar{G}}(x)\right|>\frac{z}{r}
$$

then $n$ must equal $2 d$. So if $n \neq 2 d$, then

$$
|r k(x)-z| \leq \frac{z}{r}
$$

for all $0 \neq x \in N$. Re-stating this as the two inequalities

$$
\begin{aligned}
& r k(x)-z \leq \frac{z}{r} \text { and } \\
& z-r k(x) \leq \frac{z}{r}
\end{aligned}
$$

and solving for $k(x)$ we obtain the desired inequality

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k(x) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

The proof is complete.
Lemma 5.6.4 Let $r$ be a prime. Let $G=G_{1} \times \cdots \times G_{m}$, where each $G_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $N_{i}$ of order $r^{n_{i}}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement $C_{i}$ of order $z_{i}$. Let $S$ be a maximal subgroup of

$$
N=N_{1} \times \cdots \times N_{m}
$$

and let

$$
k(x)=\left|\left\{c \in C: x \in S^{c}\right\}\right|
$$

for all $x \in N$, where $C=C_{1} \times \cdots \times C_{m}$. Suppose that $z_{i}=\frac{r^{n_{i}-1}}{r^{a_{i}-1}}$ for some $d_{i}$ dividing $n_{i}$ and $\left(z_{i}, r-1\right)=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Suppose further that $S \cap N_{i}<N_{i}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m$. Then either $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for some $i$ or

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k(x) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

for all $1 \neq x \in N$, where $z=\Pi_{i=1}^{m} z_{i}$.

Proof. We shall prove the result by induction on $m$. We have already shown in Lemma 5.6.3 that the result holds in the case when $m=1$. So in order to complete the proof we need only show that the result holds for $m$ if we assume that it holds for $m-1$.

Let $\hat{G}_{i}=G_{1}+\cdots+G_{i-1}+G_{i+1}+\cdots+G_{m}$ and, let $\hat{N}_{i}$ and $\hat{C}_{i}$ denote the corresponding subgroups of $N$ and $C$. Let

$$
k_{i}\left(\hat{x}_{i}\right)=\left|\left\{\hat{c}_{i} \in \hat{C}_{i}: \hat{x}_{i} \in\left(S \cap \hat{N}_{i}\right)^{\hat{c}_{i}}\right\}\right|
$$

for all $\hat{n}_{i} \in \hat{N}_{i}$. Then since

$$
\left(S \cap \hat{N}_{i}\right)^{c_{i}}=S \cap \hat{N}_{i}
$$

for all $c_{i} \in C_{i}$, we see that

$$
k\left(\hat{x}_{i}\right)=z_{i} k_{i}\left(\hat{x}_{i}\right)
$$

for all $\hat{x}_{i} \in \hat{N}_{i}$ and by our induction hypothesis either $n_{j}=2 d_{j}$ for some $j \neq i$ or

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2} z_{j}} \leq k_{i}\left(\hat{x}_{i}\right) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2} z_{i}}
$$

for all $1 \neq \hat{x}_{i} \in \hat{N}_{i}$ and

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k\left(\hat{x}_{i}\right) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

for all $1 \neq \hat{n}_{i} \in \hat{N}_{i}$. So if we can show that either $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for some $i$ or

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

for all $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in N$ satisfying $x_{i} \neq 1$ for all $i$ the proof will be complete.

As in Lemma 5.6 .3 we can assume without loss of generality that there exists a primitive $z_{i}$ th root of unity $\epsilon_{i}$ of $F_{i}=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n_{i}}}$ such that

$$
G_{i}=\left[F_{i}^{+}\right]\left\langle\epsilon_{i}\right\rangle,
$$

the external semi-direct product of $F_{i}^{+}$and $\left\langle\epsilon_{i}\right\rangle$ via $\sigma_{i}$, where $\sigma_{i}$ is the homomorphism from $\left\langle\epsilon_{i}\right\rangle$ to $\operatorname{Aut}\left(F_{i}^{+}\right)$defined by

$$
x_{i}^{\sigma_{i}\left(\epsilon_{i}^{u_{u}^{\prime}}\right)}=x_{i} \epsilon_{i}^{j_{i}} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x_{i} \in F_{i}^{+}$and $0 \leq j_{i} \leq z_{i}-1$. Let $R=\mathbb{F}_{r}$ and let $R^{\times}=\langle\mu\rangle$. Suppose that

$$
\tilde{G}=[N] \tilde{C}
$$

the external semi-direct product of $N=F_{1}^{+} \times \cdots \times F_{m}^{+}$and

$$
\dot{C}=\left\langle\epsilon_{1}\right\rangle \times \cdots \times<\epsilon_{m}>\times<\mu>
$$

via $\tilde{\sigma}$, where $\tilde{\sigma}$ is the homomorphism from $\tilde{C}$ to $\operatorname{Aut}(N)$ defined by

$$
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)^{\partial\left(\left(\epsilon_{1}^{1}, \ldots, \epsilon_{m}^{\prime}, \mu^{k}\right)\right)}=\left(x_{1} \epsilon_{1}^{j_{1}} \mu^{k}, \ldots, x_{m} \epsilon_{m}^{j_{m}} \mu^{k}\right)
$$

for all $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in N$ and $0 \leq j_{i} \leq z_{i}-1$ and $0 \leq k \leq r-1$. Then

$$
k(x)=\left|\left\{\left(j_{1}, \ldots, j_{m}\right) \in J: x \in S^{\left(\jmath_{1}, \ldots, e^{m}, 1\right)}\right\}\right|
$$

for all $x \in N$, where

$$
J=\left\{\left(j_{1}, \ldots, j_{m}\right): 0 \leq j_{i} \leq z_{i}-1,1 \leq i \leq m\right\}
$$

Let $\chi_{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)}=\chi_{x_{1}} \ldots \chi_{x_{m}}$, where $\chi_{x_{1}}$ denotes the linear character of $F_{i}^{+}$ defined by

$$
\chi_{x_{i}}(x)=e^{2 \pi i T r_{F}\left(x_{i} x\right) / r}
$$

for all $x \in F_{i}^{+}$. Then as in Lemma 5.6 .3 there exists a $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right) \in F^{+}$ with $y_{i} \neq 0$ for all $i$ such that

$$
\chi_{\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)}, \chi_{\left(y_{1} \mu_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \mu\right)}, \ldots, \chi_{\left(y_{1} \mu^{r-1}, \ldots, y_{m} \mu^{r-1}\right)}
$$

are the non-trivial characters of $N$ whose kernels contain $S$. Hence

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{r-1} \chi_{\left(y_{1} \mu^{k}, \ldots, y_{m} \mu^{k}\right)}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)=r-1
$$

if $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in S$, and

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{r-1} \chi_{\left(y_{1} \mu^{k}, \ldots, y_{m} \mu^{k}\right)}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)=-1
$$

if $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \notin S$. Furthermore, by Theorem 3.4.6, $\chi_{\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)}^{\bar{G}}$ is an irreducible character of $\dot{G}$,
$\chi_{\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)}^{\dot{\tilde{G}}}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)=\sum_{j_{1}=0}^{z_{1}-1} \cdots \sum_{j_{m}=0}^{z_{m}-1} \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} \chi_{\left(y_{1} \epsilon^{-j_{1} \mu^{k}}, \ldots, \nu_{m} \epsilon^{\left.-j_{m} \mu^{k}\right)}\right.}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)$
for all $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in N$ and $\chi_{\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)}^{\dot{G}}$ vanishes outside $N$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\chi_{\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)}^{\dot{\hat{y}}}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right) & =\sum_{j_{1}=0}^{z_{1}-1} \cdots \sum_{j_{m}=0}^{x_{m}-1} \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} \chi_{\left(y_{1} \mu^{k}, \ldots, y_{m} \mu^{k}\right)}\left(\left(x_{1}^{\epsilon^{-j_{1}}}, \ldots, x_{m}^{\epsilon^{-j_{m}}}\right)\right) \\
& =(r-1) k\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)-\left(z-k\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)\right) \\
& =r k\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)-z
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
(r-1) z \prod_{i=1}^{m} r^{n_{i}} & =\sum_{\dot{j} \in \tilde{G}} \chi_{y}^{\dot{G}}(\tilde{g})^{2} \\
& =\sum_{x \in N} \chi_{y}^{\dot{G}}(x)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose that there exists a $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in N$ such that $x_{i} \neq 0$ for all $i$ and

$$
\left|\chi_{y}^{\bar{G}}(x)\right|>\frac{z}{r} .
$$

Then

$$
(r-1) z \Pi_{i=1}^{m} r^{n_{i}}>z(r-1)\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2}
$$

from above and because $x$ is contained in a conjugacy class of length $z(r-1)$. So

$$
\Pi_{i=1}^{m} r^{n_{i}}>\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2}
$$

But $r^{n_{i}}=z_{i}\left(r^{d_{i}}-1\right)+1$, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Pi_{i=1}^{m} z_{i}\left(r^{d_{i}}-1\right)+1 & >\left(\frac{z}{r}\right)^{2} \\
\Pi_{i=1}^{m} r^{d_{i}}-1 & \geq \frac{\prod_{i=1}^{m} z_{i}}{r^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

But $m>1$ and $z_{i} \geq r^{2 d_{i}}+r^{d_{i}}+1>r^{d_{i}+1}-r$ unless $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$.
So if $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in N$ such that $x_{i} \neq 0$ for all $i$ and

$$
\left|\chi_{y}^{\tilde{G}}(n)\right|>\frac{z}{r}
$$

then $n_{i}=2 d_{i}$ for some $i$. Therefore if $n_{i} \neq 2 d_{i}$, then

$$
|r k(x)-z| \leq \frac{z}{r}
$$

and solving for $k(x)$ we obtain the desired inequality

$$
\frac{(r-1) z}{r^{2}} \leq k(x) \leq \frac{(r+1) z}{r^{2}}
$$

Theorem 5.6.5 Let $G=K X$ be a finite soluble group satisfying the following conditions.
(a) $K \cap X=1$;
(b) $K=G^{\prime \prime}$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(c) $X$ is a non-abelian $\mathcal{X}$-group;
(d) $X \subseteq A u t\left(G^{\prime \prime}\right)$.
(e) $\left(\left|X^{\prime}\right|,\left|X: X^{\prime}\right|\right)=1$.

Then either $G$ does not possess a model subgroup or $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius kernel of order $2^{n}+1$.

Proof. Since $X$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group, $X=X_{1} \cdots X_{m} A$, where $A$ is abelian, $\left[X_{i}, X_{j}\right]=$ 1 for $i \neq j$ and $\left[X_{i}, A\right]=1$ for all $i$. Furthermore, $N_{i}=X_{i}^{\prime}$ is complemented in $X_{i}$ for all $i$, and if $C_{i}$ is a complement of $N_{i}$ in $X_{i}$, then $Z_{i}=Z\left(X_{i}\right)=C_{C_{i}}\left(N_{i}\right)$ and $X_{i} / Z_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with cyclic Frobenius complement $C_{i} / Z_{i}$ and elementary abelian Frobenius kernel $N_{i} Z_{i} / Z_{i}$ of order $r_{i}^{n_{1}}$.

Suppose that $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$. Then $C_{i} / Z_{i}$ has order

$$
z_{i}=\frac{r_{i}^{n_{1}}-1}{r_{i}^{d_{i}}-1}
$$

for some $d_{i}$ dividing $n_{i}$ and $\left(z_{i}, r_{i}-1\right)=1$, by Theorem 2.5.2, Theorem 2.5.3 and Corolla ry 3.5.6. Let $x_{i}=r^{n_{i}}$ and $y_{i}=r^{d_{i}}$.

Furthemore, if we let $x=\Pi_{i=1}^{m} x_{i}$, let $y=\Pi_{i=1}^{m} y_{i}$, and let $z=\Pi_{i=1}^{m} z_{i}$, then

$$
\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi(1)=|G: H|=\frac{|G|}{|H K / K||H \cap K|}=c y z q^{h}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{h}}=|K| /|H \cap K|$ and $c=|Z(X)|$, by Theorem 2.3.2, Theorem 2.4.2, Lemma 2.6.1.

Let $\pi=\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{t}\right\}$ be the set of primes dividing the order of

$$
N=X^{\prime}=N_{1} \times \cdots \times N_{m},
$$

and let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{p_{s}}=\left\{i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}:\left|N_{i}\right|=p_{s}^{a}\right\}
$$

for $1 \leq s \leq t$. Then

$$
\{1, \ldots, m\}=\bigcup_{1 \leq s \leq t} \mathcal{S}_{p_{p}} .
$$

and $X=X_{p_{1}} \ldots X_{p_{t}} A$, where

$$
X_{p_{0}}=Y_{j \in \mathcal{S}_{p_{0}}} x_{j}
$$

Let $N_{p_{2}}$ and $C_{p_{s}}$ denote the corresponding subgroups of $X_{p_{0}}$. Now since $\left(|X|,\left|X: X^{\prime}\right|\right)=1$, the subgroup $N_{p_{e}}$ is the $p_{s}$-Sylow subgroup of $N Z(X)$ and

$$
N Z(X)=N_{p_{1}} \times \cdots \times N_{p_{e}} \times Z(X)
$$

Let $V$ denote $\operatorname{Irr}(K)$ regarded as a faithful irreducible $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$-module and let $W$ be a $\mathbb{F}_{q}[N Z(X)]$ - submodule of $V$. Then

$$
V=\sum_{x \in X} W x
$$

and $C_{N_{\mathrm{i}}}(W)<N_{\mathrm{i}}$ for all $i$ and $C_{Z(X)}(W)=1$, because $C_{X}(V)=1$. Furthermore, the abelian group $N Z(X) / C_{N Z(X)}(W)$ is cyclic of order $p_{1} \times \cdots \times p_{t} \times c$ and the submodule $W$ has dimension $q^{b}$, where

$$
b=o(q) \bmod p_{1} \times \cdots \times p_{t} \times c
$$

by Theorem 1.1.1. So $M=C_{N Z(X)}(W)=M_{p_{1}} \times \cdots \times M_{p_{t}}$, where $M_{p_{\mathbf{t}}}$ is a maximal subgroup of $N_{p_{s}}$ satisfying $M_{p_{\mathrm{s}}} \cap N_{j}<N_{j}$ for all $j \in \mathcal{S}_{p_{\mathrm{a}}}$.

Let $\bar{X}=X / N Z$ and $\bar{C}_{i}=C_{i} N Z(X) / N Z(X)$. Then Suppose that $M^{\bar{c}}=$ $M^{c}=C_{N Z(X)}(W c)$ is equal to $M$ for some

$$
1 \neq \bar{c} \in \bar{X}=\bar{C}_{1} \times \cdots \times \bar{C}_{m}
$$

Then there exists an $i$ such that $\bar{c}=\bar{c}_{i} \hat{\bar{c}}_{i}$, where $1 \neq \bar{c}_{i} \in \bar{C}_{i}$ and

$$
\hat{\bar{c}}_{i} \in \bar{C}_{1} \times \cdots \times \bar{C}_{i-1} \times \bar{C}_{i+1} \times \cdots \times \bar{C}_{m}
$$

Thus

$$
\left(M \cap N_{i}\right)^{\bar{c}_{i}}=\left(M \cap N_{i}\right)^{\bar{c}_{i} \hat{c}_{i}}=\left(M \cap N_{i}\right)^{\bar{c}}=M^{c} \cap N_{i}=M \cap N_{i} .
$$

So $\bar{c}_{i}$ acts fixed-point freely on $N_{i} /\left(M \cap N_{i}\right)$ by Lemma 1.7 .4 , since it acts fixed-point-freely on $N_{i}$ and $o\left(\bar{c}_{i}\right)$ must divide $r-1$ by Lemma 1.7.1 and Lemma 1.5.1. But $\left(z_{i}, r-1\right)=1$, so $M^{c}=M$ if and only if $c \in N Z(X)$. Hence $W c \cong W c^{\prime}$ if and only if $c^{\prime}=c n z$ for $n \in N$ and $z \in Z(X)$. and by Clifford's Theorem [1, Theorem 6.5, page 80],

$$
V=\bigoplus_{\ell \in L} W \ell
$$

where $L$ is a transversal for $N Z(X)$ in $X$. In other words $V$ is the induced $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$-module $W^{X}$ of dimension $z b$.

Suppose that $x \in X-N Z(X)$ and $o(x N Z(X))=u$. Let $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{f}$ be a set of orbit representatives of the $\langle x\rangle$-set
$\{W \ell: \ell \in L\}$
and let the set $\left\{w_{i 1}, \ldots, w_{i b}\right\}$ be a basis of $W_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq f$. Then the set

$$
\left\{w_{11}, w_{11} x, \ldots, w_{11} x^{u-1}, \ldots, w_{f b}, w_{f b} x, \ldots, w_{f b} x^{u-1}\right\}
$$

is a basis for $V$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and thus

$$
\left|C_{V}(x)\right| \leq q^{\frac{s b}{u}} .
$$

In particular, $\left|C_{K}(x)\right| \leq q^{\frac{4 \hbar}{3}}$, since $z_{i}$ has odd order for all $i$.
Let $n \in N Z(X)$, let $\ell \in L$, and let $U$ be an irreducible $\mathbb{F}_{q}[\langle n\rangle]$-submodule of $W \ell$. Suppose that $u=\frac{1<n>1}{C_{<n>(V)}}$ and that $b_{n}=o(q) \bmod u$. Then, by Theorem 1.1.1, $U$ is either the trivial $\mathbb{F}_{q}[\langle n>|$-module or there exists a $u$ th root of unity $\epsilon$ of $F=\mathbb{F}_{q^{b_{n}}}$, by Lemma 3.4.10, such that $U$ is isomorphic to $F$ viewed as an $\mathbb{F}_{q}[<n>]$-module via the $\langle n\rangle$-action

$$
x n^{i}=x \epsilon^{i} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x \in F$ and $0 \leq i \leq o(n)-1$. Furthermore, by Clifford's Theorem [1, Theorem 6.5, page 80],

$$
W c=\underbrace{U \oplus \cdots \oplus U}_{\frac{b}{b_{n}}},
$$

since $N$ is abelian. Thus $n$ either centralizes $W \ell$ or $n$ acts fixed-point freely on $W \ell$. So

$$
\left|C_{K}^{\prime}(n)\right|=\left|C_{V}(n)\right|=q^{k(n) b},
$$

where $k(n)=\left|\left\{\ell \in L: n \in M^{\ell}\right\}\right|$. If $n \notin N$, then clearly $k(n)=0$, since $M \subseteq N$. If $n \in N$ and $\bar{X}=X / Z(X)$, then

$$
k(n)=k(\bar{n})=\left|\left\{l \in L: \bar{n} \in \bar{M}^{\bar{l}}\right\}\right| .
$$

But

$$
\bar{X}=\bar{X}_{p_{1}} \times \cdots \times \bar{X}_{p_{t}}
$$

where $\bar{X}_{p_{1}}=\bar{N}_{p_{s}} \bar{C}_{p_{s}}$ and $\bar{N}_{p_{s}} \cap \bar{C}_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}=1$. So there exists a unique element $\bar{n}_{p_{\mathrm{a}}} \in N_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}$ for $1 \leq s \leq t$ such that

$$
\bar{n}=\bar{n}_{p_{1}} \ldots \bar{n}_{p_{1}} .
$$

and if we choose any one element $\overline{\boldsymbol{C}}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ from each subgroup $\bar{C}_{p_{\mathrm{a}}}$ for $1 \leq s \leq t$ then there exists a unique $\bar{\ell} \in L$ such that $\bar{\ell}=\bar{c}_{p_{1}} \ldots \bar{c}_{p_{\mathbf{t}}} \bar{n}_{\ell}$. So $\bar{n} \in \bar{M}^{\bar{l}}$ if and only if $\bar{n}_{p_{s}} \in \bar{M}_{p_{q}}^{\bar{c}_{p_{s}}}$ for $1 \leq s \leq t$. Thus

$$
k(n)=k(\bar{n})=\Pi_{s=1}^{t} k_{p_{s}}\left(\bar{n}_{p_{s}}\right)
$$

where $k_{p_{s}}\left(\bar{n}_{p_{s}}\right)=\left|\left\{\bar{c}_{p_{s}} \in \bar{C}_{p_{s}}: \bar{n}_{p_{s}} \in \bar{M}_{p_{s}}^{\bar{c}_{p_{s}}}\right\}\right|$. Finally, since $\bar{X}_{p_{\mathrm{s}}}$ is a direct product of Frobenius groups satisfying the conditions in Lemma 5.6.4 we see that

$$
\left|C_{K}(n)\right| \leq q^{\frac{3.6}{4}}
$$

for $1 \neq n \in N$.
Let $\lambda_{1}=1_{K}, \ldots, \lambda_{t}$ be a set of orbit representatives of $\operatorname{Irr}(K)$ regarded as an $X$-set. Then

$$
\operatorname{Irr}(G)=\operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{1}\right) \dot{\cup} \cdots \dot{\cup} \operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{t}\right)
$$

where $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{i}\right)=\left\{\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}(G):<\chi_{K}, \lambda_{i}>\neq 0\right\}$. Furthermore,

$$
\lambda_{i}^{G}=\sum_{\chi \in \operatorname{Ir}\left(G \mid \lambda_{i}\right)} a_{x} \chi
$$

where $a_{\chi} \neq 0$ for all $\chi \in \operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{1}\right)$. So

$$
|X|(t-1)=\sum_{i=2}^{t} \lambda_{i}^{G}(1) \geq \sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)-\operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid I_{K}\right)} \chi(1)
$$

and $|X|(t-1)+y z c \geq y z c q^{h}$, since

$$
y z c=\sum_{x \in \operatorname{Ir}\left(G \mid \ell_{K}\right)} \chi(1) .
$$

Re-arranging the inequality we obtain

$$
|X| t-y z c q^{h}-(x-y) z c \geq 0
$$

Now suppose that $\chi_{1}, \ldots, \chi_{t}$ are elements of $\operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{1}\right), \ldots, \operatorname{Irr}\left(G \mid \lambda_{t}\right)$ respectively. Then, by Clifford's Theorem [1, Theorem 6.5, page 80 ], $\chi_{i}(1)$ is greater than or equal to the length of the orbit of $\operatorname{Ir}(K)$ containing $\lambda_{i}$ for all $i$. So

$$
p^{z b} \leq \sum_{i=1}^{t} \chi_{i}(1) \leq \sum_{x \in \operatorname{Irr}(G)} \chi(1)=y z c q^{h}<y z q^{h+b},
$$

since $|\operatorname{Irr}(K)|=|K|=q^{z b}$ and $c \mid q^{b}-1$, and consequently $q^{(z-1) b-h} \leq y z-1$.
Suppose that $h \leq \frac{7 z b}{8}+1$. Then

$$
2^{\frac{x-8}{8}-1} \leq 2^{\frac{(x-8) b}{8}-1} \leq q^{\frac{(z-8) b}{8}-1} \leq q^{(z-1) b-h} \leq y z<z^{2}
$$

and applying the substitution $z=8(w+1)+8$ we obtain

$$
2^{w} \leq 64 w^{2}+144 w+256
$$

So $w$ must be less than 14 and $z$ must be less than 128 , if $h \leq \frac{7 z}{8}+1$.
Let $P(q)=\sum_{x \in X} C_{K}(x)-y z c q^{h}-(x-y) z c$, a polynomial of degree $z b$ in $q$. Then

$$
P(1)=x z c-y z c-x z c+y z c=0 .
$$

and consequently there exists a polynomial $Q(q)$ of degree $z b-1$ such that

$$
P(q)=(p-1) Q(q)
$$

Suppose that $P(q)=a_{z b} q^{z b}+\cdots+a_{1} q+a_{0}$ and

$$
Q(q)=b_{z b-1} q^{z b-1}+\cdots+b_{1} q+b_{0}
$$

Then $a_{n}=b_{n-1}-b_{n}$ for $1 \leq n \leq z b-1$ and $b_{0}=-a_{0}$. So

$$
b_{n}=-\sum_{i=0}^{n} a_{i}=\sum_{i=n+1}^{2 b} a_{i}
$$

for $0 \leq n \leq z b-1$, since $\sum_{i=0}^{z b} a_{i}=0$.
Now $C_{X}(K)=1$ and consequently $b_{z b-1}=a_{z b}=1$. Furthermore, if we assume that $z \geq 121$ then $h>\frac{7 z b}{8}+1$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_{2 b-1} & =a_{z b-2}=\cdots=a_{h+1}=0 \\
a_{h} & =-y z c \text { and } \\
a_{h-1} & =a_{h-2}=\cdots=a_{h-2-(z b-h)}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

since $h-2-(z b-h)>\frac{3 z b}{4}$ and

$$
C_{K}(x) \leq q^{\frac{3 x y}{4}}
$$

for all $x \in X$. So if $R(x)=b_{h-3-(z b-h)} q^{h-3-(z b-h)}+\cdots+b_{1} q+b_{0}$, then
$Q(q)=q^{z b-1}+\cdots+q^{h}-(y z c-1) q^{h-1}-\cdots-(y z c-1) q^{h-2-(z b-h)}+R(x)$.
Now if $\ell$ is the smallest prime dividing $z$, then

$$
\sum_{i=h-3-(z b-h)}^{\frac{3 b}{t}} a_{i} \leq x c-1<y z c-1
$$

since

$$
C_{K}(x) \leq q^{\frac{16}{T}}
$$

for all $x \in X-N Z(X)$. So using this observation and the fact that $b_{i-1} \geq b_{i}$ for all $i<h-1$ we obtain

$$
R(x) \leq b_{0} q^{\frac{z b}{7}} \leq(x-y) z c q^{\frac{\text { 生 }}{l}}
$$

since $b_{0}=-a_{0}=(x-y) z c-\left|\left\{x \in X:\left|C_{K}(x)\right|=1\right\}\right|$, and consequently

$$
R(x) \leq y z^{2} c q^{\frac{16}{3}}
$$

Furthermore,

$$
(y z c-1) q^{h-2-(z b-h)}>(y z c-1) q^{\frac{7 z b}{8}+1-2-\frac{z b}{8}+1}=(y z c-1) q^{\frac{3 \frac{2}{4}}{}>y z c q^{\frac{2 z b}{3}} . . . ~}
$$

Suppose that $(y z c-1) q^{h-2-(z b-h)} \leq R(x)$. Then

$$
q^{\frac{2 z b}{3}}<z q^{\frac{2 b}{3}}
$$

and applying the substitution $z=3 w$ we obtain

$$
2^{w}<3 w .
$$

Thus $w<4$ and $z<12$ contradicting our assumption that $z \geq 128$. Combining this inequality with the inequalities

$$
q^{z b-i} \leq(y z c-1) q^{h-i}
$$

for $1 \leq i \leq 1+(z b-h)$ we see that $Q(q)<0$ if $q$ is a prime and thus $P(q)<0$ if $q$ is a prime. But

$$
P(q)=\sum_{x \in X} C_{K}(x)-y z c q^{h}-(x-y) z c=|X| t-y z c q^{h}-(x-y) z c \geq 0
$$

by Theorem 5.6.1, and we obtain the desired contradiction.
If $z<128$ and $m=1$, then

| $r_{1}$ | $n_{1}$ | $d_{1}$ | $z_{1}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 3 | 1 | 7 |
| 3 | 3 | 1 | 13 |
| 2 | 4 | 1 | 15 |
| 2 | 6 | 2 | 21 |
| 2 | 5 | 1 | 31 |
| 5 | 3 | 1 | 31 |
| 7 | 3 | 1 | 57 |
| 2 | 6 | 1 | 63 |
| 2 | 9 | 3 | 73 |
| 2 | 8 | 2 | 85 |
| 3 | 6 | 2 | 91 |
| 9 | 3 | 1 | 91 |
| 3 | 5 | 1 | 121 |
| 2 | 7 | 1 | 127 |

So if $z<128$, then $m<3$ and if $m=2$ then

| $r_{1}$ | $n_{1}$ | $d_{1}$ | $z_{1}$ | $r_{2}$ | $n_{2}$ | $d_{2}$ | $z_{2}$ | $z$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 3 | 1 | 7 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 7 | 49 |
| 2 | 3 | 1 | 7 | 3 | 3 | 1 | 13 | 91 |
| 2 | 3 | 1 | 7 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 15 | 105 |

In all these cases it can be shown using similar methods to those outlined in this proof and those in Theorem 5.6.2 that $G$ does not possess a model subgroup.

## Chapter 6

## Main Theorem

In this chapter we shall prove the main results of this thesis. In doing so we shall establish under what circumstances a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 satisfying the conditions in Case D possesses a model subgroup. We will go on to formulate two conjectures and give examples of metabelian minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups satisfying the conditions outlined in Cases $D$ and $G$ in order to shed light on some of the problems still to be overcome.

### 6.1 Metabelian Groups

Theorem 6.1.1 Suppose that $G$ is a metabelian finite soluble group satisfying

$$
\left(\left|G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

and that $G$ possesses a model subgroup. Then there exists a group $L=$ $L_{1} \times \cdots \times L_{m}$ where $L_{i}$ is a Frobenius group with minimal Frobenius kernel
$N_{i}$ and abelian Frobenius complement $C_{i}$, and a homomorphism

$$
\mu_{G}: G \rightarrow L
$$

such that ker $\mu \cap G^{\prime}=1$. In particular, $G$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group if $\mu_{G}$ is an epimorphism.

Proof. Since $\left(\left|G^{\prime}\right|,\left|G: G^{\prime}\right|\right)=1$, the derived group $G^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G$ by an abelian group, $B$ say. Let

$$
\Pi=\left\{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{t}\right\}
$$

be the set of primes dividing the order of $G^{\prime}$ and let $G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}$ be the $p_{s}$-Sylow subgroup of $G^{\prime}$. Then

$$
G^{\prime}=G_{p_{1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{t}}^{\prime}
$$

Suppose that $C_{B}\left(G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}\right)=B$ for some $j$. Then

$$
G=G_{p_{\mathrm{e}}}^{\prime} \times \hat{G}_{p_{s}}^{\prime}
$$

where

$$
\hat{G}_{p_{t}}^{\prime}=\left(G_{p_{1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{s-1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{t+1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{t}}^{\prime}\right) B
$$

and consequently

$$
G^{\prime}=\dot{G}_{p}^{\prime}
$$

contradicting the fact that $G_{p_{t}}^{\prime} \subseteq G^{\prime}$. So $B / C_{B}\left(G_{p_{q}}^{\prime}\right)$ is a non-trivial $p_{s}^{\prime}$-group of automorphisms of $G_{p_{0}}^{\prime}$ for $1 \leq s \leq t$ and thus

$$
G_{p_{t}}^{\prime}=X_{s 1} \times \cdots \times X_{s m_{t}}
$$

where $X_{s j}$ is homocyclic and $X_{s j} / \Phi\left(X_{s j}\right)$ is an irreducible $B / C_{B}\left(G_{p_{s}}^{\prime}\right)$-group for $1 \leq j \leq m_{s}$. Furthermore, using a similar argument to one above we can show that $C_{B}\left(X_{s j}\right) \neq B$ for $1 \leq s \leq t$ and $1 \leq j \leq m_{s}$. Let

$$
\hat{X}_{s j}=X_{s 1} \times \cdots \times X_{s(j-1)} \times X_{s(j+1)} \times \cdots \times X_{s m}
$$

and let

$$
K_{s j}=\left(G_{p_{1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{s-1}}^{\prime} \times \hat{X}_{s j} \times G_{p_{s+1}}^{\prime} \times \cdots \times G_{p_{t}}^{\prime}\right) C_{B}\left(X_{s j}\right)
$$

Clearly, $K_{s j}$ is a normal subgroup of $G$ and

$$
G / K_{s j} \cong\left[X_{s j}\right] B_{s j}
$$

a Frobenius group with homocyclic Frobenius kernel $X_{s j}$ and Frobenius complement $B_{s j}=B / C_{B}\left(X_{s j}\right)$. But if $H$ is a model subgroup of $G$ then by Theorem 2.3.2 $H K / K$ is a model subgroup of $G / K$, so by Theorem 3.3.6 we see that $X_{s j}$ must be minimal for $1 \leq s \leq t$ and $1 \leq j \leq m_{s}$. Let

$$
L=L_{11} \times \cdots \times L_{t m_{t}}
$$

where $L_{s j}=\left[X_{s j}\right] B_{s j}$, and let $\mu_{B}$ be the map defined from $B$ to $B_{11} \times \cdots \times$ $B_{t m_{t}} \subseteq L$ by

$$
\mu_{B}(b)=\left(b C_{B}\left(X_{11}\right), \ldots, b C_{B}\left(M_{t m_{t}}\right)\right)
$$

for all $b \in B$. Then $\mu_{B}$ is clearly a homomorphism. Furthermore, if $\mu_{G}$ is the map defined from $G$ to $L$ by $\mu_{G}\left(g^{\prime} b\right)=g^{\prime} \mu_{B}(b)$ for all $g^{\prime} \in G^{\prime}$ and $b \in B$, then $\mu_{G}$ is a homomorphism and

$$
\mu_{G}\left(G^{\prime}\right)=X_{11} \times \cdots \times X_{t m_{l}}
$$

The result now follows by Lemma 4.2.2.

### 6.2 Soluble Groups

We are ready to prove our main result.
Theorem 6.2.1 Let $G$ be a non-abelian finite soluble group and let $\bar{G}=$ $G / G^{\prime \prime}$. Suppose that $G$ possesses a model subgroup,

$$
\left(\left|\bar{G}^{\prime}\right|,\left|\bar{G}: \bar{G}^{\prime}\right|\right)=1
$$

and that the homomorphism $\mu_{\bar{G}}$ defined in the proof of Theorem 6.1.1 is onto. Then one of the following three conditions is satisfied :
(a) $G$ is metabelian.
(b) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$.
(c) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{6}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $\left(2^{6}-1\right) /\left(2^{2}-1\right)$.

Proof. Let $G$ be a minimal counter-example to our claim. Then $K=G^{\prime \prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ and $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group by Theorem 6.1.1. Suppose that $N$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ satisfying $K \cap N=1$. Then $(G / N)^{\prime \prime}=K N / N$ and $G / K N$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group by Lemma 4.2 .1 contradicting the minimality of $G$. So we may assume without loss of generality that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ and re-applying Lemma 4.2.1 we see that $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 . The result
now follows by Lemma 4.3.2, Lemma 4.3.3, Lemma 4.3.4, Lemma 5.1.1, Theorem 5.2.4, Theorem 5.4.1 and Theorem 5.6.2.

The primary function of the two conditions set out in Theorem 6.2.1 is to limit the number of potential counter-examples that have to be considered. For instance, in the Case studies considered we only use the co-prime condition in Theorem 5.6.2 and this does not appear to have a crucial impact upon its proof. In order to illustrate this point further we return to Case D.

### 6.3 Case D

In this section we determine a necessary condition for a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$ group of derived length 3 satisfying the conditions outlined in Case $D$ to possess a model subgroup. The key observation can be viewed as a generalization of a result which plays an important role in the Higman's classification of Suzuki 2-groups [8, Lemma 4 and Theorem 3].

Theorem 6.3.1 Let $G=R C$, where $R$ is a special $r$-group and $C$ is cyclic of order

$$
\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

for some $d \mid n$. Suppose that $R / R^{\prime}$ and $R^{\prime}$ regarded as $G F(r)[C]$-modules are faithful and irreducible. Then $R / R^{\prime}$ and $R$ cannot be $G F(r)[C]$-isomorphic unless $r=2$ and $n=2 d$.

Proof. Let $M$ denote the faithful irreducible $G F(r)[C]$-module $R / R^{\prime}$. Then there exists a primitive $\left(r^{n}-1\right) /\left(r^{d}-1\right)$-st root of unity $\lambda$ such that

$$
K=G F(r)[\lambda]=G F\left(r^{n}\right)
$$

by Theorem 1.1.1 and the $K[C]$-module $M \otimes K$ has a basis

$$
u_{0}, \ldots, u_{n-1}
$$

such that

$$
u_{i} c=\lambda^{r^{\prime}} u_{i}
$$

for $i \in\{0, \ldots, n-1\}$. Let $N$ denote the faithful irreducible $G F(r)[C]$ - module $R^{\prime}$. Then the $K[C]$-module $N \otimes K$ is spanned by the set of elements

$$
\left\{\left[u_{i}, u_{\imath}\right] \mid 0 \leq i<j \leq n-1\right\}
$$

and

$$
\left[u_{i}, u_{j}\right] c=\lambda^{r^{1}+r^{\jmath}}\left[u_{i}, u_{j}\right]
$$

Suppose that $M$ and $N$ are $G F(r)[C]$-isomorphic. Then

$$
\lambda=\lambda^{r^{1}+r^{\jmath}}
$$

for some pair $\{i, j\}$ satisfying $0 \leq i<j \leq n-1$, by an argument outlined by Higman [8, Lemma 4 and Theorem 3]. In other words

$$
r^{i}+r^{j}-1 \equiv 0 \bmod \frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

But $i<j \leq n-1$ and consequently there exists a $y<r^{d}-1$ such that

$$
r^{i}+r^{j}-1=y \times\left(r^{n-d}+\cdots+r^{d}+1\right)
$$

for some pair $\{i, j\}$ such that $0 \leq i<j \leq n-1$.
If $i \leq j<d$, then $r^{i}+r^{j}-1<r^{d}$, a contradiction.

If $d \leq i<j$, then

$$
r^{i}+r^{j}-1=y \times r^{d} \times\left(r^{n-2 d}+\cdots+r^{d}+1\right)+y
$$

and

$$
r^{i}+r^{j}-(y+1)=y \times r^{d} \times\left(r^{n-2 d}+\cdots r^{d}+1\right)
$$

So $(y+1)$ must be congruent to $0 \bmod r^{d}$ contradicting our assertion that $y<r^{d}-1$.

If $i<d$ and $d<j$, then

$$
r^{i}-1-y=y \times r^{d} \times\left(r^{n-2 d}+\cdots+r^{d}+1\right)-r^{d}\left(r^{j-d}\right)
$$

and

$$
r^{i}-1-y \equiv 0 \bmod r^{d}
$$

which implies that $r^{i}-1$ must equal $y$. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{i}+r^{j}-1 & =\left(r^{i}-1\right)\left(r^{n-d}+\cdots+r^{d}+1\right) \\
& =r^{i+n-d}+\cdots+r^{i+d}+r^{i}-r^{n-d}-\cdots-r^{d}-1
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{j} & =r^{i+n-d}+\cdots+r^{d+i}-r^{n-d}-\cdots-r^{d} \\
& =r^{d}\left(r^{i+n-2 d}+\cdots+r^{i}-r^{n-2 d}-\cdots-r^{d}-1\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

a contradiction.
If $i<j=d$, then $n=2 d, r=2$ and $i=1$. The proof is complete.

The following example illustrates that if $n=2 d$ and $r=2$, then groups do exist satisfying the conditions above.

Let $F=G F\left(2^{6}\right)$, let $\theta$ be the automorphism of $F$ of order 3 defined by

$$
a^{\theta}=a^{4}
$$

for all $a \in F$, and $F^{\star}=\langle\lambda\rangle$. Let $\mu=\lambda^{7}$ and let

$$
G=[A(6, \theta)] C
$$

be the semi-direct product of $A(6, \theta)$ and $C=\left\langle\xi_{\mu}\right\rangle$, a cyclic group of order

$$
\frac{2^{6}-1}{2^{3}-1},
$$

where $A(6, \theta)$ and $\xi_{\mu}$ are as defined in Section 5.3. Then $A(6, \theta)$ is a Suzuki 2-group by Theorem 5.3.3,

$$
A(6, \theta)^{\prime}=\mathcal{R}
$$

where $\mathcal{R}$ is as defined in Section 5.3, and $A(6, \theta) / \mathcal{R}$ and $\mathcal{R}$ regarded as $G F(2)[C]$-modules are faithful and irreducible. Furthermore, $A(6, \theta) / \mathcal{R}$ and $\mathcal{R}$ are isomorphic regarded as $G F(2)[C]$-modules. It can be shown that this group does not possess a model subgroup.

Theorem 6.3.2 Let $G=\left(G^{\prime} A\right) C$ be a finite group satisfying the following conditions:
(i) $\left(\left|G^{\prime} A\right|,|C|\right)=1$;
(ii) $K=\left[G^{\prime}, A\right]$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$;
(iii) $A / K=Z(G / K)$;
(iv) $G / A$ is a Frobenius group at $C A / A$ with minimal Frobenius kernel $G^{\prime} A / A$;
(v) $G^{\prime} A$ is an $r$-group;
(vi) $A$ is an elementary abelian $r$-group;
(vii) $G^{\prime}$ is a special $r$-group;
(viii) $K=\Phi\left(G^{\prime} A\right)=\left(G^{\prime} A\right)^{\prime}$ and $K \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime} A\right)$.

Then either $G$ does not possess a model subgroup or $G / A$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius kernel of order $2^{n}+1$.

Proof. Suppose that $G$ has a model subgroup $H$. Then $H A / A$ is a model subgroup of $G / A$ by Theorem 2.3.2 and consequently by Theorem 3.2.1

$$
|C|=\frac{r^{n}-1}{r^{d}-1}
$$

for some $d$ dividing $n$.
Let $a \in A-K$. Then the map $\phi_{a}$ from $G^{\prime} / K$ to $K$ defined by

$$
\phi_{a}\left(g^{\prime} K\right)=\left[g^{\prime}, a\right]
$$

for all $g^{\prime} K$ is well-defined and is a homomorphism, since $K \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime} A\right)$. Furthermore, if $B=<a>K \triangleleft G$, then

$$
A \subseteq C_{G}(B) \triangleleft G
$$

and consequently $C_{G}(B)$ either equals $A$ or contains $G^{\prime} A$, since $G^{\prime} A / A$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G / A$.

Suppose that $C_{G}(B)$ is indeed contained in $G^{\prime} A$. Then $G / C_{G}(B)$ has order co-prime to $p$. So we can apply Maschke's theorem to the elementary abelian group $B$ regarded as an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}(B)\right]$-module. Hence

$$
B=K \times L
$$

where $L \cong B / K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{p}\left[G / C_{G}(B)\right]$-module, contradicting the fact that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$.

So we may assume without loss of generality that $C_{G}(B)=A$ and consequently the homomorphism $\phi_{a}$ is a monomorphism. Furthermore, since $K$ is an irreducible $C$-module and $G^{\prime} / K$ is a faithful irreducible $C$-module, the order of $K$ must be less than or equal to that of $G^{\prime} / K$, by Theorem 1.1.1. So $\phi_{a}$ is an isomorphism. Finally, we observe that

$$
\phi_{a}\left(\left(g^{\prime} K\right)^{c}\right)=\left[g^{\prime c}, a\right]=\left[g^{\prime}, a\right]^{c}=\phi_{a}\left(g^{\prime} K\right)^{c}
$$

since $a \in Z(G / K)$ and $K \subseteq Z\left(G^{\prime} A\right)$. So $G^{\prime} / K$ and $K$ are $\mathbb{F}_{p}[C]$-isomorphic. The result now follows by Theorem 6.3.2

### 6.4 Nilpotent-by-Abelian Groups

Theorem 6.4.1 Let $G$ be a nilpotent-by-abelian group and let $\bar{G}=G / G^{\prime \prime}$ be a $\mathcal{X}$-group. Then $G$ possesses a model subgroup only if one of the following three conditions is satisfied:
(a) $G$ is metabelian.
(b) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$.
(c) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{6}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $\left(2^{6}-1\right) /\left(2^{2}-1\right)$.

Proof. Let $G$ be a minimal counter-example to our claim. Then $K=G^{\prime \prime}$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ and $G / K$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group. Suppose that $N$ is a minimal normal subgroup of $G$ satisfying $K \cap N=1$. Then $(G / N)^{\prime \prime}=K N / N$ and $G / K N$ is a $\mathcal{X}$-group by Lemma 4.2 .1 contradicting the minimality of $G$. So we may assume without loss of generality that $K$ is the unique minimal normal subgroup of $G$ and re-applying Lemma 4.2 .1 we see that $G$ is a minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-group of derived length 3 . The result now follows by Lemma 4.3.2, Lemma 4.3.3, Lemma 4.3.4, Lemma 5.1.1, Theorem 5.2.4, Theorem 5.4.1 and Theorem 6.3.2.

### 6.5 Conjecture

Given all that we have seen to date and noting that the group in Example C is not a Frobenius group with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{6}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $\left(2^{6}-1\right) /\left(2^{2}-1\right)$ we make the following conjecture

Conjecture If a finite soluble group $G$ possesses a model subgroup, then $G$ satisfies one of the following two statements :
(a) $G$ is metabelian.
(b) $G$ possesses a normal subgroup $N$ such that $G / N$ is a Frobenius group
with elementary abelian Frobenius kernel of order $2^{2 n}$ and cyclic Frobenius complement of order $2^{n}+1$.

And finally in order to illustrate some of difficulties that lie ahead in trying to prove the conjecture we give the following two examples of metabelian minimal non- $\mathcal{X}$-groups satisfying the conditions outlined in Cases $D$ and $G$ possessing a model subgroup.

### 6.6 Example Case D (Metabelian)

Let $F=\mathbb{F}_{r^{n}}$ and let $F^{\times}=<\lambda>$ and let $M$ be any maximal subgroup of $F^{+}$. Let

$$
C=\left\langle\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\lambda^{r-1} & 0 \\
0 & \lambda^{r-1}
\end{array}\right)\right\rangle \subseteq G L(2, F)
$$

and let

$$
Z=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & x \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right): x \in M\right\} \subseteq G L(2, F)
$$

Let $S=C Z=C \times Z$ and let $V$ be the natural $\mathbb{F}_{r^{2 n}}[S]$ - module. Then

$$
G=[V] S
$$

the external semi-direct product of $V$ and $S$ possesses a model subgroup.

### 6.7 Example Case G (Metabelian)

Let $F_{i}=\mathbb{F}_{2^{4}}$ for $i=1,2$. Let $F_{i}^{\times}=<\lambda_{i}>$ for $i=1,2$. Let

$$
S_{i}=\left[F_{i}^{+}\right]\left\langle\lambda_{i}\right\rangle,
$$

the external semi-direct product of $F_{i}^{+}$and $\left\langle\lambda_{i}\right\rangle$ via $\sigma_{i}$, where $\sigma_{i}$ is the homomorphism from $\left\langle\lambda_{i}\right\rangle$ to $\operatorname{Aut}\left(F_{i}^{+}\right)$defined by

$$
x_{i}^{\sigma_{i}\left(\lambda_{i}^{j}\right)}=x_{i} \lambda_{i}^{j} \quad \text { (field multiplication) }
$$

for all $x_{i} \in F_{i}^{+}$and $0 \leq j \leq 14$. Let

$$
D=S_{1} \times S_{2}
$$

Let

$$
C=\left\langle\left(\lambda_{1}^{5}, 1\right),\left(\lambda_{1}^{3}, \lambda_{2}^{3}\right),\left(1, \lambda_{2}^{5}\right)\right\rangle \subseteq D,
$$

and let

$$
N=F_{1}^{+} \times F_{2}^{+} \subseteq D
$$

Then

$$
G=N C
$$

possesses a model subgroup.

## Bibliography

[1] Isaacs, I. Martin. Character theory of finite groups. Dover Publications, New York, 1994.
[2] Huppert, B. Endliche Gruppen I Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg New York, 1967.
[3] Lidl, R. and Niederreiter, H. Finite Fields Encyclopaedia of Mathematics and Its Applications. Cambridge University Press, London New York New Rochelle Melbourne Sydney, 1984.
[4] Kleidman, P. and Liebeck, M. The Subgroup Structure of the Finite Classical Groups Cambridge University Press, London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series. 129, 1990
[5] Doerk K. and Hawkes T.O. Finite Soluble Groups Walter de Gruyter, Berlin New York, 1992.
[6] Beisiegel, B. Semi-Extraspezielle p-Gruppen Math. Z. 156 (1977), no. 3, 247-254
[7] Huppert, B. and Blackburn, N. Finite Groups II Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelburg New York, 1982.
[8] Higman, G. Suzuki 2-groups Illinois J. Math. 7, 79-96 (1963)
[9] Gollan, H.W. On the existence of models in some sporadic simple groups Arch. Math., 60, 305-309, 1993.
[10] Kljacko, A.A. Models for the complex representations of the groups $G L(n, q)$ Math. USSR-Sb, 48, 365-379, 1984.
[11] Inglis, N.F.J. and Richardson, R.W. and Saxl, J. An explicit model for the complex representations of $S_{n}$ Arch. Math, 54, 258-259, 1990.
[12] Baddeley, R.W. Models and Involution Models for wreath products and certain Weyl Groups J.London Math.Soc. (2) 44, 55-74 1991.

